

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Application Number: 10/689,478
Applicant: Daniel S. Papenfuss, et al.
Filing Date: 20 October 2003
Title: Tear Initiation and Directional Tear Films and Packages
Made Therefrom
Examiner: Marc A. Patterson
Art Unit: 1772
Attorney Docket Number: 20717
Customer Number: 30482

Certificate of Submission

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being submitted to the United States Patent and
Trademark Office via EFS-Web on 9 October 2007 by Christine E. Benter.

Signature: /Christine E. Benter/ Registration Number: 51,457

Mail Stop Appeal Brief – Patents
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

APPEAL BRIEF

Appellant files this brief in support of an appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals
and Interferences from the Examiner's Office Action of 19 October 2006. The 19
October 2006 Office Action is not a final action; however, the Examiner has thrice
rejected all of this application's pending claims (claims 1-67). In both the 1 July 2005
and 22 March 2006 Office Actions, Claims 1-4, 6-13 and 17-23 were rejected under 35

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

U.S.C. § 102(b) as allegedly being anticipated by U.S. Patent 5,874,155 ("Gehrke et al."); Claim 5 was rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as allegedly being unpatentable over Gehrke et al.; and Claims 14-16 and 24-67 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as allegedly being unpatentable over Gehrke et al. in view of U.S. Patent 5,783,266 ("Gehrke"). On 21 June 2006, applicant filed a Notice of Appeal and a Pre-Appeal Brief Request for Review. In response, the Panel reopened prosecution. In the next (19 October 2006) Office Action, Claims 1-13 and 17-23 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as allegedly being unpatentable over U.S. Patent 5,660,903 ("Andersen"), and Claims 14-16 and 24-67 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as allegedly being unpatentable over Andersen in view Gehrke. The Examiner and the applicant participated in an interview on 9 February 2007, discussing the claimed invention versus the prior art of record, specifically whether the prior art reference discloses all of the limitations of the claimed invention. The applicant filed a Notice of Appeal and a Pre-Appeal Brief Request for Review on 20 February 2007. The 9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review instructed appellant to proceed to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences and submit an appeal brief.

Please charge deposit account number 502023 in the amount of \$510.00 for the fee for filing a brief in support of an appeal. Any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this same deposit account number 502023. A Petition for Extension of Time under 37 CFR 1.136(a) is submitted with this appeal brief. As requested in the Petition, please also charge deposit account number 502023 in the amount of \$2,230 for the cost of the Petition for Extension of Time from 9 May 2007 to 9 October 2007. Once again, any deficiency or overpayment should be charged or credited to this same deposit account number 502023.

Table of Contents

Real Party in Interest	-5-
Related Appeals and Interferences	-6-
Status of Claims	-7-
Status of Amendments	-8-
Summary of the Claimed Subject Matter	-9-
Grounds of Rejection to be Reviewed on Appeal	-14-
Arguments	-15-
I. An Accurate Determination Of The General Scope And Content Of Andersen And Gehrke Provides The Correct Starting Point And Demonstrates That Andersen Is Non-Analogous Prior Art.	-15-
A. Andersen Generally Discloses A Sheet Having Inorganically Filled Polymer Matrix.	-15-
B. Gehrke Generally Discloses A Multilayer Film With A Barrier Layer Comprising Metal.	-19-
C. The Accurate Determination Of The General Scope And Content Of Andersen Demonstrates That Andersen Is Non-Analogous Prior Art.	-19-
II. In Contrast To The Contentions Of The 19 October 2006 Office Action, Specific Differences Exist Between The Prior Art And The Claimed Invention And Demonstrate That The Claimed Invention Is Patentable Over The Cited Prior Art.	-22-
A. The 19 October 2006 Office Action Contains Factual Errors As Well As Incomplete Understanding And Misunderstandings Of The Prior Art And The Claimed Invention.	-23-
<i>Claim 1</i>	-23-
<i>Claims 2 and 3</i>	-33-
<i>Claim 9 (and Claim 10)</i>	-35-

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

	<i>Claims 12 and 13</i>	-36-
	<i>Claims 17 and 22</i>	-36-
	<i>Claim 21</i>	-38-
	<i>Claims 14-16 and 24-67</i>	-41-
B.	With The Many Factual Errors, Incomplete Understanding And Misunderstandings Of The 19 October 2006 Office Action, The Examiner Has Failed To Establish A <i>Prima Facie</i> Case Of Obviousness.	-43-
III.	Claims 1-13 And 17-23 Of The Claimed Invention Are Patentable Under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) Over Andersen, And Claims 14-16 and 24-67 Of The Claimed Invention Are Patentable Under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) Over Andersen In View Of Gehrke.	-46-
	Claims Appendix	-48-
	Evidence Appendices	-61-
	Related Proceedings Appendix	-62-

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Real Party in Interest

The real party in interest is Milprint, Inc., a wholly-owned subsidiary of Bemis Company, Inc.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Related Appeals and Interferences

Appellant knows of no prior or pending appeals, judicial proceedings or interferences which may be related to, directly affect, be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in this appeal. Appellant has included a Related Proceedings Appendix with the indication "None."

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Status of Claims

Each of claims 1-67 is pending and stands rejected. Appellant is appealing the rejection of all pending claims (i.e., each of claims 1-67). Appellant has included a Claims Appendix containing a complete copy of the claims involved in this appeal.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Status of Amendments

Appellant filed no amendments subsequent to the rejections of each of claims 1-67 in the 19 October 2006 Office Action.

Summary of the Claimed Subject Matter

Claim 1 and its dependent claims (claims 2-23) are to a flexible multilayer packaging film. The film comprises a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer and a fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 6-15 and Figure 2 reference numerals 1-4.) The first film layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer. (Page 18 lines 6-9.) And the first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Page 4 lines 11-12.) The external surface of the first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion on an external surface of the packaging film. (Page 19 lines 18-20, Page 5 lines 20-22 and Figure 4 reference numerals 11, 1, 18 and 19.) The second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between the first film layer and the third film layer. (Page 18 lines 9-10.) The third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between the second film layer and the fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 11-12.) The barrier material is polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer, polyvinyl chloride, polyvinylidene chloride, polyvinylidene chloride/methyl acrylate copolymer, polyamide, high density polyethylene, metals, metal oxides, organometallic compounds, ceramics or mixtures thereof. (Page 9 lines 15-22 and Page 4 lines 17-22.) The fourth film layer comprises a second biaxially-oriented polymer. (Page 18 lines 13-14.) And the fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Page 4 lines 23-24.) The external surface of the fourth film layer comprises at least one score-line. (Page 20 lines 3-4 and Figure 2 reference numerals 4 and 20.) The surface-roughened portion of the first film layer and the at least one score-line of the fourth film layer intersect at least one axis drawn between both the first film layer and the fourth film layer such that the at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer when the film is positioned in a lay flat condition. (Page 19 line 27 –

Page 20 line 2, Page 20 lines 9-13 and Figure 5 reference numerals 18, 19, 1, 20, 4, 22.)

Claim 24 and its dependent claims (claims 25-41) are to a flexible multilayer packaging film. The film comprises a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer and a fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 6-15 and Figure 2 reference numerals 1-4.) The first film layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyester, polyolefin, polyamide or blend thereof. (Page 18 lines 8-9 and Page 5 lines 15-20.) And the first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Pages 4 lines 11-12.) The first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion on an external surface. (Page 19 lines 18-20, Page 5 lines 20-22 and Figure 4 reference numerals 11, 1, 18 and 19.) The second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between the first film layer and the third film layer. (Page 18 lines 9-10.) The third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between the second film layer and the fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 11-12.) The barrier material is a metallic coating having a thickness of from about 200-700 Å. (Page 10 lines 10-20 and Page 6 lines 7-9.) The fourth film layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyester, polyolefin, polyamide or a blend thereof. (Page 18 lines 13-15 and Page 5 lines 15-20.) And the fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Page 4 lines 23-24.) The external surface of the fourth film layer includes at least one score-line. (Page 20 lines 3-4 and Figure 2 reference numerals 4 and 20.) The surface-roughened portion of the first film layer and the at least one score-line of the fourth film layer intersect at least one axis drawn between both the first film layer and the fourth film layer such that the at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer when

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

the film is positioned in a lay flat condition. (Page 19 line 27 – Page 20 line 2, Page 20 lines 9-13 and Figure 5 reference numerals 18, 19, 1, 20, 4, 22.)

Claim 42 and its dependent claims (claims 43-53) are to a flexible multilayer packaging film. The film comprises a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer and a fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 6-15 and Figure 2 reference numerals 1-4). The first film layer comprises at least a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyethylene terephthalate, polypropylene, polyamide or blend thereof. (Page 5 lines 15-20.) The first film layer is an outer film layer. (Page 5 lines 20-22.) And the first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Pages 4 lines 11-12.) The external surface of the first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion. (Page 19 lines 18-20, Page 5 lines 20-22 and Figure 4 reference numerals 11, 1, 18 and 19.) The second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between the first film layer and the third film layer. (Page 18 lines 9-10.) The third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between the second film layer and the fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 11-12.) The barrier material is a metallic coating on the external surface of the fourth film layer. (Page 10 lines 10-11, Page 18 lines 11-13, Page 21 lines 24-27 and Figure 2 reference numerals 3 and 4.) The metallic coating has a thickness of from about 200-700 Å. (Page 10 lines 10-20 and Page 6 lines 7-9.) And the metallic coating is metal, metal oxide, organometallic, ceramic or mixtures thereof. (Page 9 lines 15-22 and Page 4 lines 17-22.) The fourth film layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyethylene terephthalate, polypropylene, polyamide or blend thereof. (Page 5 lines 15-20.) The fourth film layer is an inner film layer. (Page 5 lines 22-24.) And the fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Page 4 lines 23-24.) The external surface of the fourth film layer includes at least one score-line. (Page

20 lines 3-4 and Figure 2 reference numerals 4 and 20.) The surface-roughened portion of the first film layer and the at least one score-line of the fourth film layer intersect at least one axis drawn between both the first film layer and the fourth film layer such that the at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer when the film is positioned in a lay flat condition. (Page 19 line 27 – Page 20 line 2, Page 20 lines 9-13 and Figure 5 reference numerals 18, 19, 1, 20, 4, 22.)

Claim 54 and its dependent claims (claims 55-67) are to a package. The package comprises a flexible multilayer film. (Page 20 lines 17-18.) The film comprises a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer and a fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 6-15 and Figure 2 reference numerals 1-4.) The first film layer comprises at least a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyethylene terephthalate, polypropylene, polyamide or blend thereof. (Page 5 lines 15-20.) The first film layer is an outer film layer. (Page 5 lines 20-22.) And the first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Pages 4 lines 11-12.) The external surface of the first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion. (Page 19 lines 18-20, Page 5 lines 20-22 and Figure 4 reference numerals 11, 1, 18 and 19.) The second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between the first film layer and the third film layer. (Page 18 lines 9-10.) The third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between the second film layer and the fourth film layer. (Page 18 lines 11-12.) The barrier material is a metallic coating on the external surface of the fourth film layer. (Page 10 lines 10-11, Page 18 lines 11-13, Page 21 lines 24-27 and Figure 2 reference numerals 3 and 4.) The metallic coating has a thickness of from about 200-700 Å. (Page 10 lines 10-20 and Page 6 lines 7-9.) And the metallic coating is metal, metal oxide, organometallic, ceramic or mixtures thereof. (Page 9 lines 15-22 and Page 4 lines 17-

22.) The fourth film layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer which is a polyethylene terephthalate, polypropylene, polyamide or blend thereof. (Page 5 lines 15-20.) The fourth film layer is an inner film layer. (Page 5 lines 22-24.) And the fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface. (Page 4 lines 23-24.) The external surface of the fourth film layer includes at least one score-line. (Page 20 lines 3-4 and Figure 2 reference numerals 4 and 20.) In addition to the flexible multilayer film, the package also comprises at least one first folded side edge, a top first seal edge portion, an opposite bottom second seal edge portion in parallel with the top first seal edge portion and a third seal portion disposed perpendicular between the first seal edge portion and the bottom second seal edge portion and parallel with the at least one first folded side edge. (Page 20 lines 20-25, Page 21 lines 3-5, Figure 6 reference numerals 27, 29, 30 and 31 and Figure 7 reference numerals 27, 29, 30 and 35.) The package further comprises a tear-initiation area. (Page 20 line 28, Page 21 line 7 and Figures 6 and 7 reference numeral 32.) Along with the tear-initiation area, the package comprises a directional tear zone. (Page 20 lines 28-30, Page 21 lines 7-9 and Figures 6 and 7 reference numeral 33.) The first folded side edge of the package is superimposed on the surface roughening portion of the first film layer of the packaging film. (Page 20 lines 25-28, Page 21 lines 5-7 and Figures 6 and 7 reference numerals 27 and 18.)

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Grounds of Rejection to be Reviewed on Appeal

1. Whether claims 1-13 and 17-23 are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,660,903) ("Andersen"). Appellant has provided a copy of Andersen in the Evidence Appendix.

2. Whether claims 14-16 and 24-67 are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen in view of Gehrke (U.S. Patent No. 5,783,266) ("Gehrke"). Appellant has provided a copy of Gehrke in the Evidence Appendix.

Arguments

Claims 1-13 and 17-23 are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen, and claims 14-16 and 24-67 are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen in view of Gehrke.

Graham v. Johns Deere Co. of Kansas City, 148 USPQ 459 (1966) provides the framework for this analysis:

While the ultimate question of patent validity is one of law [citation omitted], the § 103 condition, which is but one of three conditions, each of which must be satisfied, lends itself to several basic factual inquiries. Under § 103, the scope and content of the prior art are to be determined; differences between the prior art and the claims at issue are to be ascertained; and the level of ordinary skill in the pertinent art resolved. Against this background, the obviousness or nonobviousness of the subject matter is determined. Such secondary considerations as commercial success, long felt but unsolved needs, failure of others, etc., might be utilized to give light to the circumstances surrounding the origin of the subject matter sought to be patented.

Id. at 467. For the present application, the Examiner has failed to correctly conduct an adequate Graham analysis. The scope and content of Andersen and Gehrke and the differences between Andersen and Gehrke and the claims of the present application indicate that the claims of the present application are patentable over Andersen and Gehrke.

I. An Accurate Determination Of The General Scope And Content Of Andersen And Gehrke Provides The Correct Starting Point And Demonstrates That Andersen Is Non-Analogous Prior Art.

In order to make an adequate assessment of patentability under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), an accurate determination of the general scope and content of the prior art is essential.

A. Andersen Generally Discloses A Sheet Having A Highly Inorganically Filled Polymer Matrix.

Andersen seeks to address environmental problems of packaging materials:

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Recently there has been a debate as to which of these materials (e.g., paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, glass, or metal) is most damaging to the environment. . . . [T]he debate should not be directed to which of these materials is more or less harmful to the environment, but rather toward asking: Can we discover or develop an *alternative material which will solve most, if not all, of the various environmental problems* associated with each of these presently used materials?

(Emphasis added, Column 2 lines 42-44 and Column 4 lines 37-42.) Andersen

discloses the possibility of highly inorganically filled materials as alternative materials:

Due to the more recent awareness of the tremendous environmental impacts of using paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, and metal's for a variety of single-use, mainly disposable, items such as printed sheets or containers made therefrom (not to mention the ever mounting political pressures), there has been an acute need (long since recognized by those skilled in the art) to find environmentally sound substitute materials. In particular, industry has sought to develop *highly inorganically filled materials* for these high waste volume items. . . . [W]hat is needed are improved compositions and methods for manufacturing *highly inorganically filled organic polymer mixtures* that can be formed into sheets and other objects presently formed from paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, glass, or metal.

(Emphasis added, Column 5 lines 48-57 and Column 6 lines 28-32.) Andersen defines "sheets" as follows:

The term "sheet" as used in this specification and the appended claims is intended to include any substantially flat, corrugated, curved, bent, or textured sheet made using the methods described herein. The only essential compositional limitation is that the structural matrix of at least part of the sheet comprises a highly inorganically filled composite having a water-dispersible organic binder. The sheet may include other materials such as paper, organic coatings, ink, or other organic materials in addition to the highly inorganically filled/organic binder matrix portion.

(Emphasis added, Column 19 lines 41-50) and explains "highly inorganically filled compositions" as follows:

[H]ighly inorganically filled compositions . . . can generally be described as multi-component, multi-scale, fiber-reinforced, micro-composites. By carefully incorporating a *variety of different materials (including inorganic aggregates, organic polymers, and fibers)* capable of imparting discrete yet synergistically related properties, it is possible to create a unique class or range of micro-composites. . . . The term "multi-component" refers to the fact that the

inorganically filled materials used to make the sheets of the present invention typically include *three or more chemically or physically distinct materials* or phases, such as fibers, inorganic aggregate materials, organic aggregate materials, organic polymer binders, rheology-modifying materials, hydraulically settable materials, water, other liquids, entrapped gases, or voids. . . . [T]he term "micro-composite" refers to the fact that the inorganically filled materials are *not merely a compound or mixture but a designed matrix of specific, discrete materials on a micro-level*, which are of different sizes, shapes, and chemical make-up.

(Emphasis added, Column 7 lines 10-20 and Column 17 lines 5-12 and Column 17 lines 44-48.) Andersen, therefore, discloses a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. As explained above, this matrix comprises a water-dispersible organic binder with aggregates and fibers. Andersen further explains the water-dispersible organic binder as follows:

The moldable mixtures used to manufacture the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention develop strength properties through the drying out of a substantially solvated water dispersable organic binder. The moldable mixtures first develop workability and flow properties by *adding an amount of water to the mixture sufficient to lubricate the solid inorganic aggregate particles and fibers, and to solvate, or at least disperse, the water-dispersable organic binder*. Thereafter, the removal of water, such as by evaporation, allows the water-dispersible binder to develop its maximum strength properties. . . . [T]he total amount of organics within the hardened sheet will preferably be less than about 60% by volume of the total solids content, more preferably less than about 40%, and most preferably less than about 30%.

(Emphasis added, Column 23 lines 29-39 and Column 31 lines 28-31.) The water-dispersible organic binder may comprise polysaccharides and derivatives (e.g., cellulose-based materials and derivatives, starch-based materials and derivatives and other polysaccharides), proteins and derivatives or synthetic organic materials. (Column 23 line 62 – Column 24 line 3.) Examples of aggregates include perlite, vermiculite, sand, gravel, rock, limestone, sandstone, glass beads, aerogels, xerogels, seagel, mica, clay, synthetic clay, alumina, silica, fly ash, fumed silica, fused silica, tabular alumina, kaolin, microspheres, hollow glass spheres, porous ceramic spheres, gypsum dihydrate,

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

calcium carbonate, calcium aluminate, cork, seeds, lightweight polymers, xonotlite (a crystalline calcium silicate gel), lightweight expanded clays, hydrated or unhydrated hydraulic cement particles, pumice, exfoliated rock, and other geologic materials.

(Column 27 lines 1-10.) And examples of fibers include

naturally occurring organic fibers, such as cellulosic fibers extracted from hemp, cotton, plant leaves, wood, or stems, or inorganic fibers made from glass, graphite, silica, ceramic, or metal materials.

(Emphasis added, Column 30 lines 48-51.) The sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen are specifically disclosed as an alternative to paper and paper slurries:

Compared to paper, far more inorganic aggregate filler is incorporated into the sheets of the present invention. The highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention will include inorganic aggregates in an amount of from about 40% to about 98% by volume of the total solids content of the sheet, more preferably from about 50% to about 95%, and most preferably from about 60% to about 80%. The fibers which are dispersed within the inorganic/organic binder matrix yield a sheet with properties similar to those of tree or vegetable paper, such as tensile, flexural, and cohesive strengths, even though only about 1/50 to 1/3 as much fiber is used in the present invention. This is due in part to the fact that the fibers used in the present invention undergo far less processing than fibers used to make paper. (Emphasis added, Column 12 lines 14-28.)

Besides the inclusion of much higher concentrations of inorganic aggregate fillers, the present invention *differs from conventional paper manufacturing* processes in a number of ways. First, *far less water* is used in the moldable mixtures (less than about 50% by volume) of the present invention compared to conventional paper slurries, which typically contain water in an amount of at least 97% by volume, and even as much as 99.9% water. More importantly, the sheets are formed from a *highly cohesive, yet moldable mixture* rather than an aqueous slurry such that once placed into a shape it will generally maintain its shape unless further acted upon. Moreover, *the moldable mixtures will not shrink more than about 10%, and not at all in some cases.* Paper slurries, on the other hand, will shrink by an amount of 60% or more during the paper-making process. *Despite the differences in their composition and manufacture, the highly inorganically filler sheets of the present invention can be made to have the strength, toughness, flexibility, folding endurance, bendability, and look and feel of ordinary paper.* (Emphasis added, Column 19 lines 16-35.)

Conventional paper relies on "web" physics, or intertwining of fibers, to provide the structural matrix and mass, as well as the binding, of the paper. However, the

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

matrix of the inorganically filled materials of the present invention relies on the bond or interaction between the inorganic aggregate, the organic polymer binder, and the fibers. (Emphasis added, Column 17 lines 35-41.)

In contrast to conventional paper or paperboard, in which the properties of the sheets are extremely dependent on the properties of the pulps used, the properties of the inorganically filled sheets of the present invention are substantially independent of the properties of the fibers used in making the sheets. (Emphasis added, Column 38 lines 29-34.)

[T]he present invention provides the ability to manufacture sheets formed from moldable mixtures which contain only a fraction of the water of typical slurries used to make paper and which do not require intensive dewatering during the sheet forming process. (Emphasis added, Column 78 lines 55-59.)

B. Gehrke Generally Discloses A Multilayer Film With A Barrier Layer Comprising Metal.

Gehrke seeks to address freshness problems of chewing gum:

[T]his invention is concerned with a novel film used for packaging individual sticks of chewing gum so that the *freshness of each individual stick* of chewing gum or the like is retained for extended periods of time after the overwrap packaging has been opened.

(Emphasis added, Column 1 lines 14-19.) Gehrke discloses a multilayer film with a first layer, a second layer and, preferably, a core layer between the first and second layers.

(Column 3 lines 1-2.) Gehrke further explains the core layer as follows:

The core layer of the multilayer film is a *barrier layer*. The barrier can be either a metal foil, a thin layer of metal formed by vapor deposition, a vinylidene chloride copolymer, MXD6, a xylene group-containing polyamide resin known as nylon MXD6, (available from Toyobo or Mitsubishi Gas Chemicals Company,) nylon or ethylene vinyl alcohol (EVOH). *The preferred barrier material is a metal layer* formed by vapor deposition which is an inexpensive means for providing an oxygen and moisture barrier in a multi-layer laminate.

(Emphasis added, Column 3 lines 26-35.)

C. The Accurate Determination Of The General Scope And Content Of Andersen Demonstrates That Andersen Is Non-Analogous Prior Art.

As explained above, Andersen discloses a matrix of aggregates and fibers within a water-dispersible organic polymer binder that addresses environmental issues of

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

packaging materials and presents a specific alternative to paper and paper slurries.

Andersen uses little or no petroleum-based products or derivatives:

Unlike the manufacture of plastic or polystyrene, highly inorganically filled sheets *utilize little or no petroleum-based products or derivatives as starting materials*. Thus, although some amount of fossil fuel is necessary to generate the energy used in manufacturing the highly inorganically filled sheets, *only a fraction of the petroleum used in the manufacture of polystyrene or plastic products will be consumed overall*.

(Emphasis added, Column 10 lines 17-24.) In Andersen, polymers themselves (as opposed to water-dispersible organic polymer binders) are only disclosed as aggregates: "Examples of useful aggregates include . . . lightweight polymers. . ." (Column 27 lines 1-7, excerpts.) Specifically, Examples 37-41 include "plastic spheres" made from polypropylene as aggregate material. (Column 65 line 64 – Column 66 line 22.)

In sharp contrast, the claimed invention is a flexible multilayer packaging film that addresses issues regarding opening packages formed from flexible packaging film:

[A] *flexible packaging film* of the present invention may be *easily torn apart* manually when a surface-roughened portion on a first film layer and a score-line in a fourth film layer are configured so that they intersect an imaginary axis drawn between both first layer and fourth film layer and when the imaginary axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer. In another aspect, the present invention relates to a *package formed from a flexible multilayer film having a tear initiation area* which allows the package to be easily opened manually without any heavy manual force or cutting means. In still another aspect, the present invention relates to a *package formed from a flexible multilayer film having a controllable tear zone* which affords directional control during the opening process of the package.

(Emphasis added, Application as filed, Page 3 line 27 – Page 4 line 6.) The at least four layers of the claimed invention comprise predominately petroleum-based products or derivatives. As described in claim 1, the first layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer; the second layer comprises an adhesive; the third layer comprises material selected from polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer, polyvinyl chloride, polyvinylidene chloride, polyvinylidene chloride/methyl acrylate copolymer, polyamide,

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

high density polyethylene, metals, metal oxides, organometallic compounds, ceramics or mixtures thereof; and the fourth layer comprises a biaxially-oriented polymer.

Andersen and the claimed invention are non-analogous art. "To rely on a reference under 35 U.S.C. 103, it must be analogous prior art." (M.P.E.P. §2141.01(a)(1), Eighth Edition, August 2001, Latest Revision August 2006.) As further explained in In re Oetiker,

In order to rely on a reference as a basis for rejection of the applicant's invention, the reference must either be in the field of the applicant's endeavor or, if not, then be reasonably pertinent to the particular problem with which the inventor was concerned. [Citation omitted.] . . . We have reminded ourselves and the PTO that it is necessary to consider "the reality of the circumstances" [citation omitted] – in other words, common sense – in deciding in which fields a person of ordinary skill would reasonably be expected to look for a solution to the problem facing the inventor.

(24 USPQ2d 1443, 1445-1446 (Fed. Cir. 1992).) While Andersen and the claimed invention relate to packaging materials, Anderson is not in the field of the claimed invention's general endeavor. Common sense dictates that a person of ordinary skill in the packaging art would not look to a patent addressing environmental issues and disclosing a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix as an alternative to paper and paper slurries (as in Andersen) in order to address issues with opening a package formed from flexible packaging film (as in the claimed invention). As explained and exemplified in In re Clay.

Sydansk [a prior art reference applied against the claims of Clay] cannot be considered to be within Clay's field of endeavor merely because both relate to the petroleum industry. . . . Clay's field of endeavor is the *storage* of refined liquid hydrocarbons. The field of endeavor of Sydansk's invention, on the other hand, is the *extraction* of crude petroleum. The Board clearly erred in considering Sydansk to be within the same field of endeavor as Clay's.

(Emphasis in original, 23 USPQ2d 1058, 1060 (Fed. Cir. 1992). As stated in In re Horn, Horn, Horn, and Horn,

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

For the teachings of a reference to be prior art under 35 USC 103, there must be some basis for concluding that the reference would have been considered by one skilled in the particular art working on the pertinent problem to which the invention pertains.

(203 USPQ 969, 971 (CCPA 1979).) Common sense dictates that Andersen is neither in the same field of endeavor as the present application nor is it reasonably pertinent to the problem addressed by the present application. As stated by the Court in KSR International Co. v. Teleflex, Inc., (in an admittedly different yet still relevant context),

Rigid preventative rules [e.g., all art related to packaging materials is analogous art] that deny factfinders recourse to common sense . . . are neither necessary under our case law nor consistent with it.

(82 USPQ2d 1385, 1397 (2007).) Andersen is non-analogous art, and the rejections of claims 1-13 and 17-23 as allegedly unpatentable over Andersen and claims 14-16 and 24-67 as allegedly unpatentable over Andersen in view of Gehrke cannot be sustained.

II. **In Contrast To The Contentions Of The 19 October 2006 Office Action, Specific Differences Exist Between The Prior Art And The Claimed Invention And Demonstrate That The Claimed Invention Is Patentable Over The Cited Prior Art.**

As outlined in Graham (148 USPQ at 467), the differences between the prior art and the claimed invention are to be ascertained in making an adequate assessment of patentability under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a). In the present instance, such an analysis demonstrates that the 19 October 2006 Office Action contains factual errors as well as an incomplete understanding and misunderstandings of the prior art and the claimed invention. Furthermore, such an analysis demonstrates that the Examiner failed to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness and the claimed invention is patentable over the cited prior art.

A. The 19 October 2006 Office Action Contains Factual Errors As Well As Incomplete Understanding And Misunderstandings Of The Prior Art And The Claimed Invention.

A claim-by-claim analysis of the 19 October 2006 Office Action demonstrates the factual errors and incomplete understanding and misunderstandings it contains.

Claim 1

The 19 October 2006 Office Action states that, with regard to claim 1, Andersen discloses a laminate comprising layers of film. (Paragraph 2, Page 2.) However, in actuality, Andersen discloses a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. Andersen requires the sheet to be "a highly inorganically filled composite having a water-dispersable organic binder" (Column 19 lines 44-47.) As explained above, the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen comprises an organic binder into which aggregates and other materials are incorporated. In sixty pages and eighty-seven claims, Andersen uses the term "film" only three times: (1) Claim 49 provides that the at least one other *sheet* that is laminated to the *sheet* of claim 1 may be a metallized "film" (Column 81 lines 54-63); and based on the definition of "sheet" (and the lack of examples with any variation of a metallized "film"), this metallized "film" must be assumed to be a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix with metallized "film" as the aggregate, fiber or other component. (2) During the manufacturing process, vaporizing water may condense and creates a "thin film of water" between the *sheet* having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix and the roller. (Column 50 lines 26-32.) And (3) the coating process creates a uniform "film" on the surface of the *sheet* having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. (Column 56 lines 37-39.) In each of these instances the term "sheet" is distinct from and not equivalent to the term "film." Andersen does not equate "sheet" with "film," especially not a "flexible multilayer

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

packaging film" required not just by claim 1 but by every claim of the claimed invention.

The 19 October 2006 Office Action is in error is stating that the two terms are equivalent and interchangeable.

Also with regard to claim 1, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states that the sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen are flexible.

(Paragraph 2, Page 2.) However, in actuality, upon closer analysis of Andersen, the sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen may be flexible or *stiff and rigid*:

In addition, coatings can be applied to the surface of the sheet for a number of reasons, such as to make the sheet more waterproof, more flexible, or to give it a glossier surface. (Column 13, lines 46-49.)

Some sheets should preferably be more flexible, while others will be stiff. (Column 38 lines 50-51.)

As a general rule, inorganically filled sheets which have lower concentrations of organic polymer binder and fiber will be more rigid (Column 39 lines 61-63).

Decreasing the amount of aggregate increases the effective amounts of organic binder and fibers. Including more aggregate yields sheets which have greater stiffness, are more brittle, and have greater compressive strength. Increasing the amount of fiber and organic binder yields sheets which have greater flexibility, toughness, and tensile strength. (Column 64 lines 8-14.)

The sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen is not required to be flexible. However, the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention is required to be flexible not just by claim 1 but by every claim of the claimed invention.

The 19 October 2006 Office Action is in error is stating that the *possibly* flexible sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen is equivalent to the *required* flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention.

Additionally with regard to claim 1, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states that the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen comprises a

biaxially-oriented polymer. (Paragraph 2, Page 2.) However, in actuality, the highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen may include but does not require oriented *fibers*. Andersen explains as follows:

It will be understood that *fibers* are a preferred additive which increases the tensile strength, flexibility, ductility, and bendability of the highly inorganically filled sheets. Having a relatively high concentration of fibers is particularly important where the sheet has been scored and is expected to bend over a larger angle. In addition, the properties imparted to the hardened sheets by the fibers can be increased by *unidirectionally or bidirectionally orienting the fibers* within the sheet.

(Emphasis added, Column 14 lines 26-35.) As explained above, the fibers of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen include

naturally occurring organic fibers, such as cellulosic fibers extracted from hemp, cotton, plant leaves, wood, or stems, or inorganic fibers made from glass, graphite, silica, ceramic, or metal materials.

(Column 30 lines 48-51.) The "polymer (column 7, lines 9-11)" of Andersen (as cited in Paragraph 2, Page 2 of the 19 October 2006 Office Action) is, in actuality, the water-dispersible organic binder into which the required aggregate and optional oriented fibers are combined. In Andersen, the *fibers* of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix, and not the water-dispersible organic binder, are oriented. Andersen further explains as follows:

It should also be understood that certain sheet forming processes, such as extrusion and rolling will tend to *orient the fibers* in the direction of elongation of the mixture or sheet. This may be advantageous in order to maximize the tensile strength of the sheet in a certain direction. . . . It will be understood that the extrusion of the moldable mixture through the die head will tend to *unidirectionally orient the individual fibers* within the moldable mixture along the "Y" axis, or in the lengthwise direction of the extruded sheet. As will be seen herein below, the rolling process will further *orient the fibers* in the "Y" direction as the sheet is further elongated during the reduction process. In addition, by employing rollers having varying gap distances in the "Z" direction (such as conical rollers) some of the *fibers can also be oriented* in the "X" direction, i.e., along the width of the sheet. Thus, it is possible to create a sheet by extrusion, coupled with rolling, which will have *bidirectionally oriented fibers*.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

(Emphasis added, Column 39 lines 11-15 and Column 47 lines 5-17.) In contrast, each claim of the claimed invention requires a biaxially-oriented *polymer* (not fibers) in the first film layer and the fourth film layer of a flexible multilayer packaging film. The present application defines "biaxially-oriented" as

a polymer web or sheet which forms a film structure in which the web has been elongated in two directions at elevated temperatures followed by being "set" in the elongated configuration by cooling the material while substantially retaining the elongated dimensions. This combination of elongation at elevated temperature followed by cooling causes an alignment of the polymer chains to a more parallel configuration, thereby improving the mechanical properties of the polymeric web. Upon subsequently heating of certain unrestrained, unannealed, to its orientation temperature, heat-shrinkage may be produced. Following orientation, the *biaxially-oriented polymer web* is preferably cooled and then heated to an elevated temperature, most preferably to an elevated temperature which is above the glass transition temperature and below the crystalline melting point of the polymer. This reheating step, which may be referred to as annealing or heat setting, is performed in order to provide a polymeric web of uniform flat width. In accordance with the present invention, the *biaxially-oriented polymer web* used to form a film layer is heated to an elevated temperature in order to provide a packaging film with an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-10%, preferably, between 0-5% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96 test method, which is incorporated herein by reference. The *biaxially-oriented polymeric web* can be annealed or heated to an elevated temperature either in-line with (and subsequent to) or off-line from (in a separate process) the orientation process. However, an annealing process which is in-line with the orientation process is preferred.

(Emphasis added, Application as Filed, Page 8 line 23 – Page 9 line 13.) The biaxially-oriented *polymer* of the claimed invention that is elongated at elevated temperatures, cooled and set, and re-heated and re-set stands in sharp contrast to the biaxially-oriented *fibers* of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen that is merely extruded as a moldable mixture and not set. The 19 October 2006 Office Action is in error in equating biaxially-oriented fibers of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen with biaxially-oriented polymers of the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention.

Also with regard to claim 1, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states that the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen is laminated to at least one layer of polyamide. (Paragraph 2, Page 2.) Claim 47 of Andersen provides that the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix may be laminated together with at least one other sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix, and claim 49 provides that this other sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix may be a nylon (i.e., polyamide) sheet. (Column 81 lines 54-55 and 58-63.) However, based on the definition of sheet (as explained above and in Column 19 lines 41-50), this other sheet must be assumed to be a matrix with nylon as the aggregate, fiber or other component. Andersen does not disclose a polyamide layer as a separate barrier layer in a flexible multilayer packaging film. In fact, Andersen is silent on the use of barrier materials in general. In sixty pages and eighty-seven claims, Andersen uses the term "barrier" only three times:

Fine papers, generally made of bleached pulp, are typically used in applications demanding printing, writing, and special functional properties such as *barriers* to liquid and/or gaseous penetrants. (Emphasis added, Column 18 lines 28-31.)

[I]t is preferable to treat the roller surfaces in order to prevent sticking or adhesion of the inorganically filled sheet to the rollers. One method entails heating the rollers, which causes some of the water within the moldable mixture to evaporate, thereby creating a steam *barrier* between the sheet and the rollers. (Emphasis added, Column 49 lines 57-62.)

Referring to FIG. 1A, the side adjacent to the first drying roller is heated by the drying roller while the other side is exposed to the air. The heated sheet loses water in the form of vapor, which can escape out the sides of the roller or the surface of the sheet opposite the roller. The vapor also provides a nonstick *barrier* between the sheet and roller. (Emphasis added, Column 52 lines 32-37.)

None of these uses of "barrier" is in the same context as a separate barrier layer of a flexible multilayer packaging film as in the claimed invention (i.e., as stated in claim 1 of the claimed invention, "said third [distinct, separate] film layer comprises a barrier

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

material and is positioned between said second [distinct, separate] film layer and said fourth [distinct, separate] film layer of said film"). The 19 October 2006 Office Action is in error in equating the polyamide incorporated into the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen with a separate barrier layer (possibly of polyamide) of the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention.

Having conducted an analysis that includes the errors outlined above, the 19 October 2006 Office Action concludes,

Andersen et al therefore disclose five layers of the film, each film alternately laminated with four layers of polyamide; the laminate therefore comprises a first film layer comprising a first biaxially oriented polymer having a surface roughened portion on its external surface, a second film layer comprising adhesive positioned between the second film layer and third film layer which is a polyamide, and therefore a barrier layer, and is positioned between the second film layer and fourth film layer, and a fourth film layer having a second biaxially oriented polymer.

(Paragraph 2, Page 2 – Page 3.) However, in actuality, as explained above (1) Andersen discloses a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix and not a film; (2) Andersen discloses a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix possibly incorporating a polyamide laminated to another sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix and not a film with four separate layers of polyamide as barrier layer nor a multilayer film structure with five layers of film (N.B., the flexible multilayer packaging film as claimed comprises one barrier layer, not four barrier layers); and (3) Andersen discloses biaxially-oriented fibers incorporated in a water-dispersible organic binder not a first or second biaxially-oriented polymer. During the 8 February 2007 interview, the Examiner commented that because Andersen discloses a film laminated to at least one layer of polyamide, Andersen therefore discloses as many alternating layers as desirable. The errors in such a comment (i.e., regarding "film" and "layer") notwithstanding, the appellant respectfully submits that the Examiner is

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

fabricating a mixture from an erroneous understanding of the components of Andersen (and such resulting mixture is not even equivalent to the claimed invention). As stated in Ex parte Clapp (and in line with the KSR, 82 USPQ2d at 1396, where combination and modification require "an apparent reason," "some articulated reasoning," "identif[ication of] a reason," etc.).

Presuming arguendo that the references show the elements or concepts urged by the examiner, the examiner has presented no line of reasoning, and we know of none, as to why the artisan viewing only the collective teachings of the references would have found it obvious to *selectively pick and choose various elements and/or concepts* from the several references relied on to arrive at the claimed invention. In the instant application, the examiner has done little more than cite references to show that one or more elements or subcombinations thereof, when each is viewed in a vacuum, is known. . . . To support the conclusion that the claimed combination is directed to obvious subject matter, either the references must expressly or impliedly suggest the claimed combination or the examiner must present a convincing line of reasoning as to why the artisan would have found the claimed invention to have been obvious in light of the teachings of the references. We find nothing in the references that would expressly or impliedly teach or suggest the modifications urged by the examiner. Additionally, as aforementioned, we find no line of reasoning in the answer, and we know of none, as to why the artisan would have found the modifications urged by the examiner to have been obvious. Based upon the record before us, we are convinced that the *artisan would not have found it obvious to selectively pick and choose elements or concepts* from the various references so as to arrive at the claimed invention without using the claims as a guide.

(Emphasis added, Ex parte Clapp, 227 USPQ 972, 973 (Bd. Pat. App. & Int. 1985).) In this instance, the appellant respectfully submits that the Examiner has conducted an impermissible and inaccurate "picking and choosing" of elements to somehow arrive at the claimed invention.

The "picking and choosing" approach is further exemplified by the 19 October 2006 Office Action's incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of the fundamental, essential aspect of the claimed invention. The 19 October 2006 Office Action states

Andersen et al fail to disclose a surface – roughened portion and score line intersecting at least one axis drawn between the first film layer and fourth film layer when the film is in a lay flat condition. However, as stated above, Andersen et al disclose the score lines for bending the film. Therefore, one of ordinary skill in the art would have recognized the utility of varying the position of the score line to obtain the desired bending. Therefore, the bending would be readily determined by through routine optimization of the position of the score line by one having ordinary skill in the art depending on the desired use of the end product as taught by Andersen et al. It therefore would be obvious for one of ordinary skill in the art to vary the position of the score line, and therefore the degree of intersection, in order to obtain the desired bending, since the bending would be readily determined through routine optimization by one having ordinary skill in the art depending on the desired end result as shown by Andersen et al.

(Paragraph 2, Page 3.) Andersen does disclose a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix wherein the sheet may be textured or roughened:

The finishing rollers can also impart a textured or roughened finish to the sheets. (Column 13 lines 36-37.)

In other embodiments, the finishing rollers can impart a desired texture such as a meshed or checkered surface. Instead of using a hard and a soft roller, rollers which can imprint the sheets with the desired finish may be used. If desired, the rollers can imprint the surface of the sheet with a logo or other design. Special rollers capable of imparting a water mark can be used alone or in conjunction with any of these other rollers. The extruder rollers, reduction rollers, or compaction rollers may contain means for producing a water mark by either producing a raised or depressed area within a sheet passing therethrough. (Column 54 line 66 – Column 55 line 9.)

Andersen also does disclose a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix wherein the sheet may be scored:

The sheet can also be optionally scored, score cut, or perforated while in a slightly moistened or even in the dry condition in order to create a line within the structural matrix upon which the sheet can later be bent.

(Column 13 lines 40-43.) And Andersen does disclose one sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix possibly laminated to another sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. (Claim 47, Column 81 lines 54-55.) During the 8 February 2007 interview, the Examiner commented that because one sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix could be surface-roughened and one sheet

having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix could be scored, the user of the sheet would have their own use and could put the score line and the surface-roughened portion wherever desired. The appellant respectfully submits that this is, once again, impermissible and inaccurate "picking and choosing" of elements to somehow arrive at the claimed invention. In Andersen, the scoring (used for bending the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix) and the texturing or roughening (via imprinting a logo, watermark or other design on the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix) are done to the *same* sheet. As stated in Column 13 line 40, "The sheet can *also* be optionally scored . . ." (Emphasis added.) Andersen makes no mention of one sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix having a score line laminated to another sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix with texturing or roughening. And Andersen makes no mention of the two (the scoring and the texturing or roughening) working in concert to address issues regarding opening packages formed from flexible multilayer packaging film. Andersen does not disclose and does not even intimate a flexible multilayer packaging film with a first film layer having a surface-roughened portion on an external surface and a fourth film layer having a score line on an external surface such that the surface-roughened portion and the score line intersect at least one axis drawn between both the first film layer and the fourth film layer wherein the at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer when the film is positioned in a lay flat condition. This opening feature is the essence of the claimed invention. Such an arrangement addresses the issue of opening packages formed from flexible multilayer packaging film. As stated in the present application,

[A] flexible packaging film of the present invention may be easily torn apart manually when a surface-roughened portion on a first film layer and a score-line

in a fourth film layer are configured so that they intersect an imaginary axis drawn between both first layer and fourth film layer and when the imaginary axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer. In another aspect, the present invention relates to a package formed from a flexible multilayer film having a tear initiation area which allows the package to be easily opened manually without any heavy manual force or cutting means. In still another aspect, the present invention relates to a package formed from a flexible multilayer film having a controllable tear zone which affords directional control during the opening process of the package.

(Application as filed, Page 3 line 27 – Page 4 line 6.) Andersen makes no mention of the score line and/or texturing or roughening being used for tearing the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. In fact, Andersen teaches away from using the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix to provide a tearing feature:

The term "deflect" as used in the specification and appended claims with regard to the inorganically filled sheet means that the sheet has a structural matrix capable of bending and rolling *without rupture and change in the finished surface.* (Emphasis added, Column 41 lines 20-24)

A clam shell is made using the sheets of Examples 46-64, except that a triple reverse hinge is used. That is, a series of three score cuts are cut into the outer side of the clam shell container. Because this decreases the distance that each individual score line has to bend, *the resulting hinge can be opened and closed more times without breaking* compared to a single score cut hinge. (Emphasis added, Example 69, Column 70 lines 20-26.)

"[W]hen the prior art teaches away from combining [or modifying] certain known elements, discovery of a successful means of combining [or modifying] them is more likely to be nonobvious." KSR, 82 USPQ2d at 1395, citing United States v. Adams, 383 U.S. 39, 51-52 (1966). In contrast to the contention of the 19 October 2006 Office Action, merely varying the position of a score line used to obtain desired bending of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen would not have produce the claimed invention. The claimed invention includes a new arrangement and produces a new function and therefore should be presumed to be non-obvious absent

any factually correct reasoning that is unequivocally independent of hindsight. As stated in KSR,

A factfinder should be aware, of course, of the distortion caused by hindsight bias and must be cautious of arguments reliant upon *ex post* reasoning. See Graham, 383 U.S., at 36 (warning against a "temptation to read into the prior art the teachings of the invention in issue" and instructing courts to "guard against slipping into the use of hindsight" (quoting Monroe Auto Equipment Co. v. Heckethorn Mfg. & Supply Co., 332 F.2d 406, 412 (CA6 1964))).

KSR, 82 USPQ2d at 1397.

Claim 1 is the broadest claim of the claimed invention and addressing the issues with the 19 October 2006 Office Action's analysis of this claim is, therefore, also applicable to the patentability of each of claims 2-67. In addition, the following provides a brief discussion regarding factual errors and incomplete understanding and misunderstandings of the prior art and the claimed invention reflected in the 19 October 2006 Office Action's discussion of some of claims 2-67.

Claims 2 and 3

With regard to claims 2 and 3, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "Andersen et al discloses no shrinkage" and cites no passage of Andersen. (Paragraph 2, Page 3.) The appellant presumes this to mean that Andersen makes no mention of shrinkage. However, in actuality, Andersen does discuss shrinkage:

Another difference between the inorganically filled mixtures used to make the sheets of the present invention and slurries used to make paper is that the mixtures of the present invention *do not significantly decrease in volume or length* (i.e., *compaction or shrinkage*) from the beginning to the end of the manufacturing process. This is a radical departure from paper slurries, which are greatly reduced in volume due to the extensive dewatering that occurs. Although much of the water within the moldable mixtures of the present invention is removed by *evaporation*, the nature of the mixture is such that the spaces once occupied by water remain, either as empty voids or partially filled by the organic polymer binder. (Emphasis added, Column 10 lines 3-16.)

Moreover, the *moldable mixtures will not shrink more than about 10%*, and not at all in some cases. Paper slurries, on the other hand, will shrink by an amount of

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

60% or more during the paper-making process. (Emphasis added, Column 19 lines 27-30.)

Any material with a high specific surface area gives increased *drying shrinkage* and shrinkage defects. (Emphasis added, Column 39 lines 32-33.)

As explained in the above excerpts, any shrinkage of Andersen, minimal though it may be, that occurs is due to evaporation of water and not due to linear thermal shrinkage.

As presented above in the discussion of biaxially-oriented fibers versus biaxially-oriented polymers, the present application states,

Upon subsequently heating of certain unrestrained, unannealed, biaxially-oriented sheet or polymer to its orientation temperature, heat-shrinkage may be produced.

(Application as Filed, Page 8 lines 29-30.) Any shrinkage of the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention is due to heating and not to the mere evaporation of water. Furthermore, as stated in claims 2 and 3, any shrinkage of the claimed invention is measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96. This is the "Standard Test Method for Unrestrained Linear Thermal Shrinkage of Plastic Film and Sheeting" from ASTM International. It is incorporated by reference in the present application (see Application as Filed, Page 9 lines 9-10), and a copy is provided in the Evidence Appendix. This standard test method explains,

This test method covers determination of the degree of unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage at given specimen temperatures of plastic film and sheeting of 0.76 mm (0.030 in.) thickness or less. *This test method does not cover shrinkage from loss of solvent in some materials.*

(Emphasis added, Section 1.1.) The 19 October 2006 Office Action's discussion of claims 2 and 3 reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of not only claims 2 and 3 but also of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Claim 9 (and Claim 10)

With regard to claim 9, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "Andersen et al disclose a polymer comprising polyamide, as stated above, and therefore disclose a biaxially oriented polymer comprising polyamide." (Paragraph 2, Page 4.) Claim 9 and the related claim 10 of the claimed invention read as follows:

9. A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein both said *first biaxially-oriented polymer* and said *second biaxially-oriented polymer* are selected from the group consisting of a polyester, a polyolefin, a polyamide, and a blend thereof.

10. A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein both said *first biaxially-oriented polymer* and said *second biaxially-oriented polymer* are selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof.

(Emphasis added.) As discussed above, Andersen discloses a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix possibly laminated to another sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix, and this other sheet may be a nylon (i.e., polyamide) sheet. (Claims 47 and 49, Column 81 lines 54-55 and 58-63.) However, based on the definition of sheet (as explained above and in Column 19 lines 41-50), this other sheet must be assumed to be a matrix with nylon as the aggregate, fiber or other component. Andersen does not disclose a polyamide layer as a separate layer in a flexible multilayer packaging film. Additionally, as discussed above, the fibers of the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix are biaxially oriented. The polymer of Andersen is the water-dispersible organic binder into which aggregate and possibly oriented fibers are incorporated. The appellant respectfully submits that it is, once again, impermissible and inaccurate "picking and choosing" to assume that the polyamide of the other sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix laminated to the first sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix is polyamide fibers (as the case would need to

be for any polyamide to be oriented in Andersen). Additionally, as explained above, the fibers of Andersen are defined as

naturally occurring organic fibers, such as cellulosic fibers extracted from hemp, cotton, plant leaves, wood, or stems, or inorganic fibers made from glass, graphite, silica, ceramic, or metal materials.

(Column 30 lines 48-51.) Polyamide does not appear to fit within this definition. Again, the 19 October 2006 Office Action's discussion of claim 9 reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of not only claim 9 but also of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Claims 12 and 13

With regard to claims 12 and 13, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "the barrier material disclosed by Andersen et al is a polyamide, which is identical to the claimed barrier material" (Paragraph 2, Page 4.) As discussed above, Andersen discloses polyamide neither as a barrier material nor as a possible separate, distinct barrier layer in a flexible multilayer packaging film. Andersen discloses polyamide merely as a possible aggregate, fiber or other matrix component of a second sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix laminated to a first sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. Once again, the 19 October 2006 Office Action reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Claims 17 and 22

With regard to claim 17, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "Andersen et al discloses an adhesive that is cold – seal adhesive, because a laminate is disclosed, therefore adhered to any surface of the layers." (Paragraph 2, Page 4.) And, with regard to claim 22, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "Andersen et al disclose a

cold – seal adhesive as discussed above, and therefore disclose a top first seal edge portion and bottom second seal edge portion comprising a cold – seal adhesive."

(Paragraph 2, Page 5.) Andersen's discussion of adhesives in the context of laminating sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix is limited to the following:

"Some coatings can also be utilized as adhesives or to form laminated sheets." (Column 56 lines 20-21.) Andersen does not disclose any specific adhesives and, therefore, does not disclose any cold-seal adhesives. The appellant respectfully submits that it is, once again, impermissible and inaccurate "picking and choosing" to assume that Andersen's disclosure of a laminate includes a laminate with a cold-seal adhesive. As explained in the present application, cold-seal adhesive is a specific adhesive used for a specific purpose and is not a general-use adhesive:

As defined herein, the term "cold-seal adhesive" (also known as a contact adhesive) is one that preferentially adheres to itself or a chemically similar material under pressure or force without the need for significantly elevated temperatures e.g., without the need for temperatures above 50° C. Cold seal adhesives are typically nonadhering or only very slightly adhering to chemically dissimilar surfaces at temperatures of about 15° C. to about 50° C. The cold-seal adhesive preferably does not generally stick to uncoated surfaces or to the contents placed inside the package. When placed against each other, cold-seal adhesives typically require moderate pressure (such as that exerted by fingertip pressure) to achieve a bond without the application of significantly elevated temperatures. This is, packages may be sealed at room temperature, i.e., about 20° C. to about 30° C., and even lower, e.g. 15° C. as well as at temperatures of up to about 50° C., if the packaged product is not sensitive to such temperatures. Thus a cold-seal adhesive as used herein is one that does not require elevated temperatures, i.e., above about 50° C., for activation of its adhesive characteristics. This may include, however, cold-seal adhesives that can be hot melt coated, but that do not require the application of heat to form a seal. A specific example of a cold-seal adhesive is supplied by Rohm and Haas Company, Philadelphia, PA, U.S.A., and are sold under the trade name Coseal™ 30061A. As defined herein, the term "cold-seal" refers to the union of a surface (or portion thereof) of one film to a surface (or portion thereof) of another film or of two different portions of a surface of the same film by means of a cold-seal adhesive.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

(Application as Filed, Page 11 line 14 – Page 12 line 3.) Accordingly, the 19 October 2006 Office Action's discussion of claims 17 and 22 reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of not only claims 17 and 22 but also of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Claim 21

With regard to Claim 21, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states, "the film disclosed by Andersen et al is oriented as discussed above." (Paragraph 2, Page 4.) However, as discussed above, in actuality, the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen is not in itself oriented. It is only the *fibers* within the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen that may be oriented. (It should also be noted that claim 21 in itself does not include any discussion of the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention being oriented, and the arrangement or configuration of the package of claim 21 should not be equated to "orientation.")

Also with regard to claim 21, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states that the sheet "is bent and therefore has an easy opening tear feature and therefore forms a package comprising a tear initiation area and a directional tear zone." (Paragraph 2, Page 4.) However, as discussed above, in actuality, Andersen makes no mention of a bending as a tear feature, a tear initiation area or a directional tear zone. In fact, as discussed above, Andersen teaches away from using a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix to provide a tearing feature:

The term "deflect" as used in the specification and appended claims with regard to the inorganically filled sheet means that the sheet has a structural matrix capable of bending and rolling *without rupture and change in the finished surface*. (Emphasis added, Column 41 lines 20-24)

A clam shell is made using the sheets of Examples 46-64, except that a triple reverse hinge is used. That is, a series of three score cuts are cut into the outer side of the clam shell container. Because this decreases the distance that each

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

individual score line has to bend, *the resulting hinge can be opened and closed more times without breaking* compared to a single score cut hinge. (Emphasis added, Example 69, Column 70 lines 20-26.)

"[W]hen the prior art teaches away from combining [or modifying] certain known elements, discovery of a successful means of combining [or modifying] them is more likely to be nonobvious." KSR, 82 USPQ2d at 1395, citing United States v. Adams, 383 U.S. 39, 51-52 (1966).

Additionally with regard to claim 21, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states that the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix is sealable and

therefore Andersen et al therefore disclose a packaging having a top first edge seal portion and an opposite bottom second edge seal portion in parallel with the top first edge seal portion and a third seal portion disposed perpendicular between the top first seal edge portion and bottom second seal edge portion and parallel to a folded side and at least one first folded side edge superimposed on the surface roughened portion on an external surface of the first film layer of the package.

(Paragraph 2, Page 4 – Page 5.) The appellant is confused as to how sealability of a film, a sheet or any material makes apparent or obvious an arrangement such as that described in claim 21 (as referenced by the Examiner above). To add to appellant's confusion, as support for the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen being sealable, the 19 October 2006 Office Action cites Column 56 lines 9-14, which reads as follows:

It may be preferable to apply coatings or coating materials to the highly inorganically filled sheets prepared according to the processes set forth above. Coatings can be used to alter the surface characteristics of the sheet in a number of ways, including sealing and protecting the sheet or other object made therefrom.

This passage continues, "Coatings may provide protection against moisture, base, acid, grease, or organic solvents." (Column 56 lines 14-15.) Andersen does not discuss sealing of film layers (or even sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix)

but discusses uses a coating to protect a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. As explained in Examples 70, 72, 73, 74, 75 and 76,

The layer of wax completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. (Example 70, Column 70 lines 32-33.)

Similar to the wax in Example 70, the layer of acrylic coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. (Example 72, Column 70 lines 45-47.)

As in Examples 70 and 72, the layer of melamine coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. (Example 73, Column 70 lines 57-59.)

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of a mixture of hydroxymethylcellulose plasticized with polyethylene glycol. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. However, the surface looks even more natural and less glossy than cups coated with wax, acrylic, or melamine. (Example 74, Column 70 line 65 – Column 71 line 4.)

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of polylactic acid. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. (Example 75, Column 71 lines 8-11.)

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of soy bean protein. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. (Example 76, Column 71 lines 14-17.)

Andersen uses "sealing" in a completely different context than the "seal" of claim 21. To assert otherwise is impermissible and inaccurate "picking and choosing" of elements to somehow arrive at the claimed invention.

The 19 October 2006 Office Action's discussion of claim 21, particularly the elements of sealing, tearing and (allegedly-present) orientation, again reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of not only claim 21 but also of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Claims 14-16 and 24-67

The 19 October 2006 Office Action cites Gehrke for disclosure of a metallic coating as a barrier layer in a multilayer film. The 19 October 2006 Office Action states,

One of ordinary skill in the art would therefore have recognized the advantage of providing the metallic coating of Gehrke in Andersen et al, which comprises a multilayer film, depending on the desired barrier to oxygen and moisture of the end product.

(Paragraph 3, Page 5.) As explained above, Andersen does not comprise a flexible multilayer packaging film equivalent to the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention. Andersen comprises a sheet or sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. Additionally, Andersen's discussion of metals is limited to metal fibers as inorganic fibers or metal sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix laminated to another sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix:

35. A sheet as defined in claim 34, wherein the inorganic fibers are selected from the group consisting of glass fibers, silica fibers, ceramic fibers, carbon fibers, metal fibers, and mixtures thereof. (Claim 35, Column 81 lines 16-19.)

49. A sheet as defined in claim 47, wherein the at least one other sheet is selected from the group consisting of organic polymer sheets, metal foils, fiber sheets, ceramic sheets, ionomers, elastomeric sheets, plastic sheets, cellophane sheets, nylon sheets, wax sheets, metallized films, and combinations of the foregoing. (Claim 49, Column 81 lines 58-63.)

By definition, as explained above and in Column 19 lines 41-50, these metal sheets having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix must be assumed to incorporate metal as the fiber, as the aggregate within the water-dispersible organic binder or as some other component of the highly inorganically filled polymer matrix. Nonetheless, the 19 October 2006 Office Action further states,

It therefore would have been obvious for one of ordinary skill in the art at the time Applicant's invention was made to have provided for a metallic coating on the external surface of the layers in Andersen et al in order to obtain a film that is a barrier to oxygen and moisture as taught by Gehrke.

(Paragraph 3, Page 6.) As discussed above, in actuality, Andersen does not disclose a flexible multilayer packaging film (i.e., a film containing distinct, separate film layers as in the claimed invention or even Gehrke). Furthermore, Andersen does not disclose a distinct, separate layer (either as a barrier layer or otherwise) as an internal layer in a flexible multilayer packaging film. As stated in claim 24 of the claimed invention,

said third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between said second film layer and said fourth film layer of said film, said barrier material is a metallic coating having a thickness of from about 200-700 Å.

(Emphasis added.) The barrier layer of the claimed invention is not a metallic coating on the external surface of a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix, as would be the instance in the best case scenario combination of Andersen and Gehrke. Again, the 19 October 2006 Office Action reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

Also with regard to claims 14-16 and 24-67, the 19 October 2006 Office Action states,

Gehrke fails to disclose a metallic coating having a thickness from 200 – 700 Angstroms. However, Gehrke teaches the selection of the coating depending on the desired strength (column 7, lines 53-60). Therefore, one of ordinary skill in the art would have recognized the utility of varying the thickness to obtain the desired strength.

(Paragraph 3, Page 6.) However, Column 7 lines 53-60 addresses the thickness of a *film* and makes no mention of the thickness of a metallic coating:

Throughout this specification, reference is made to multilayer structures, inner wrappers, film structures and sheet materials. These structures are the same thickness as conventional structures used for similar packaging applications. Typical thicknesses of *films and film structures* [as a whole] can range from about 0.25 mils to 2.0 mils preferably about 0.75 to about 1.5 mils. Films thinner than about 0.25 mils may not have the strength necessary to perform the required function.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

(Emphasis added, Column 7 lines 53-60.) Once again, the 19 October 2006 Office Action reflects incomplete understanding and misunderstanding of the prior art and the claimed invention overall.

B. With The Many Factual Errors, Incomplete Understanding And Misunderstandings Of The 19 October 2006 Office Action, The Examiner Has Failed To Establish A *Prima Facie* Case Of Obviousness.

In view of the many factual errors, incomplete understanding and misunderstandings it contains, the 19 October 2006 Office Action fails to provide the necessary support for the rejection of claims 1-13 and 17-23 under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being unpatentable over Andersen and for the rejection of claims 14-16 and 24-67 under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) as being unpatentable over Andersen in view of Gehrke. The Examiner has failed to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness.

According to the M.P.E.P., to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness, the Examiner must meet three basic criteria: Either the references cited or the knowledge generally available to one of ordinary skill in the art presents some suggestion or motivation to modify the reference or to combine references; the modification or combination presents a reasonable expectation of success; and the prior art reference or references teach or suggest all the claim limitations of the pending application.

(M.P.E.P. § 2143 Eighth Edition, August 2001, Latest Revision August 2006.)

The Examiner has provided no factually accurate reason for modifying the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen to obtain the flexible multilayer packaging film of the claimed invention. The many factual errors, incomplete understanding and misunderstandings of the 19 October 2006 Office Action negate any reasons that may somehow have been provided. As referenced above, the Court in

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

KSR reiterated the necessity for the Examiner to identify a reason why a person of ordinary skill in the art would have combined or modified the prior art elements:

Although common sense directs one to look with care at a patent application that claims as innovation the combination [or modification] of two known devices according to their established functions, it can be important to identify a reason that would have prompted a person of ordinary skill in the relevant field to combine [or modify] the elements in the way the claimed new invention does.

82 USPQ2d at 1396. As further stated by the Federal Circuit in In re Kahn, 78 USPQ2d 1329 (Fed. Cir 2006) (and as quoted with agreement by the Court in KSR, 82 USPQ2d at 1396),

Rejections on obviousness grounds cannot be sustained by mere conclusory statements; instead, there must be some articulated reasoning with some rational underpinning to support the legal conclusion of obviousness. See Lee, 277 F.3d at 1343-46; Rouffett, 149 F.3d at 1355-59. This requirement is as much rooted in the Administrative Procedure Act, which ensures due process and non-arbitrary decisionmaking, as it is in §103. See Id. at 1344-45.

Kahn, 78 USPQ2d at 1336. The impermissible and inaccurate “picking and choosing” of elements of Andersen or of Andersen and Gehrke to somehow arrive at the claimed invention does not represent an apparent, articulated or identified reason for combining or modifying prior art elements.

Additionally, any such modifications of Andersen or of Andersen and Gehrke would have no reasonable expectation of success. As explained above, Andersen is non-analogous art. A person of ordinary skill in the packaging art would not look to a patent addressing environmental issues and disclosing a sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix as an alternative to paper and paper slurries (as in Andersen) in order to address issues with opening a package formed from flexible multilayer packaging film (as in the claimed invention). Additionally, as explained above, Andersen teaches away from using the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix to provide a tear feature, a tear initiation area or a direction tear zone. There

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

would be no reason to expect that the sheet having a highly inorganically filled polymer matrix of Andersen would succeed as a flexible multilayer packaging film addressing issues with opening a package formed from such film.

Finally, as explained above, the prior art as cited does not teach or suggest all the claims limitations of the claimed invention. Andersen does not teach or suggest a film. Andersen does not teach or suggest a flexible film. Andersen does not teach or suggest a biaxially-oriented polymer layer as a layer of a flexible multilayer packaging film. Andersen does not teach or suggest a flexible multilayer packaging film with a barrier layer. Andersen does not teach or suggest a first film layer with a surface-roughened portion and a fourth film layer with a score line such that the surface-roughened portion and the score line intersect at least one axis drawn between both the first film layer and the fourth film layer wherein the at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of the first film layer or the fourth film layer when the film is positioned in a lay flat condition. Andersen does not teach or suggest unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage of a flexible multilayer packaging film. Andersen does not teach or suggest a cold-seal adhesive or a cold seal. Andersen does not teach or suggest a tear feature, a tear-initiation area or a directional tear zone. Andersen does not teach or suggest a sealable flexible multilayer packaging film or a sealable flexible multilayer packaging film defining the package as claimed. Gehrke does not teach or suggest a flexible multilayer packaging film with a barrier layer with a thickness as claimed. "To establish *prima facie* obviousness of a claimed invention, all the claim limitations must be taught or suggested by the prior art." (M.P.E.P. §2143.03 Eighth Edition, August 2001, Latest Revision August 2006, citing *In re Royka*, 490 F.2d 981, 180 USPQ 580 (CCPA 1974).) Andersen does not teach or suggest all the claims limitations of claims 1-13 and 17-23,

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

and the best case scenario combination of Andersen and Gehrke does not teach or suggest all the claim limitations of claims 14-16 and 24-67.

Considering that the Examiner has provided no reason for modifying Andersen or the best case scenario combination of Andersen and Gehrke, that such modifications would have no reasonable expectation of success and that all the claim limitations of the present application are not taught or suggested by Andersen or the best case scenario combination of Andersen and Gehrke, the Examiner has failed to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness. In fact, the claims of the present application are not obvious over Andersen and are not obvious over Andersen in view of Gehrke.

III. Claims 1-13 And 17-23 Of The Claimed Invention Are Patentable Under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) Over Andersen, And Claims 14-16 And 24-67 Of The Claimed Invention Are Patentable Under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) Over Andersen In View Of Gehrke.

For an obviousness analysis under 35 U.S. C. § 103(a), Graham requires that the scope and content of the prior art be determined and that the differences between the prior art and the claimed invention be ascertained. Appellant's determination of the scope and content of Andersen and Gehrke (the prior art cited in this present application) significantly differs from the determination reached by the Examiner. The Appellant respectfully submits that the Examiner erred in his determination. Using the correct determination of the prior art (as well as the claimed invention) reveals significant differences between Andersen and Gehrke and the claimed invention. The Examiner has failed to establish a *prima facie* case of obviousness. In fact, the claims of the present application are not obvious in view of Andersen and are not obvious in view of Andersen in view of Gehrke.

Appellant respectfully submits that claims 1-13 and 17-23 of the claimed invention are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen and that claims 14-16

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

and 24-67 of the claimed invention are patentable under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a) over Andersen in view of Gehrke. The appellant respectfully requests that the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences withdraw the Examiner's rejection and allow the claims.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: 9 October 2007

/Christine E. Benter/

Christine E. Benter
Registration No. 51,457

Bemis Company, Inc.
2200 Badger Avenue
Oshkosh, Wisconsin 54904
Telephone: 920-303-7970
Facsimile: 920-303-7810
Email: cebenter@bemis.com

Claims Appendix

1 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film comprising:

- (a) a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer, and a fourth film layer, wherein said first film layer comprises a first biaxially-oriented polymer and said first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface of said first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion on an external surface of said packaging film;
- (b) wherein said second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between said first film layer and said third film layer;
- (c) wherein said third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between said second film layer and said fourth film layer of said film, wherein said barrier material is selected from the group consisting of polyvinyl alcohol, ethylene vinyl alcohol copolymer, polyvinyl chloride, polyvinylidene chloride, polyvinylidene chloride/methyl acrylate copolymer, polyamide, high density polyethylene, metals, metal oxides, organometallic compounds, ceramics and mixtures thereof;
- (d) wherein said fourth film layer comprises a second biaxially-oriented polymer and said fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface comprises at least one score-line; and
- (e) wherein said surface-roughened portion and said score-line intersect at least one axis drawn between both said first film layer and said fourth film layer wherein said at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of said first film layer or said fourth film layer when said film is positioned in a lay flat condition.

2 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and

transverse direction of between 0-10% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

3 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 2, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-5% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

4 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, further comprising a fifth film layer positioned between said third film layer and said fourth film layer, wherein said fifth film layer comprises an adhesive.

5 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said at least one score-line of said fourth film layer has a depth of from about 50-95% of the thickness of said fourth film layer.

6 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said at least one score-line is continuous.

7 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said at least one score-line is non-continuous.

8 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said at least one score-line is formed by optical ablation.

9 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein both said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are selected from the group consisting of a polyester, a polyolefin, a polyamide, and a blend thereof.

10 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein both said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are

selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof.

11 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein both said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are the same biaxially-oriented polymer.

12 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said barrier material is an oxygen barrier and said film has an oxygen transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 cm³/100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM D-3985-81 test method.

13 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said barrier material is a water vapor barrier and said film has a water vapor transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 g./100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM F-1249 test method.

14 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said barrier material is a metallic coating on said external surface of said fourth film layer wherein said metallic coating has a thickness of from about 200-700 Å.

15 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 14, wherein said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of metal, metallic oxide, organometallic compounds, ceramic and mixtures thereof.

16 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 15, wherein said metallic coating comprises aluminum, zinc, nickel, copper, bronze, gold, silver, tin, or alloys thereof.

17 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said external surface of said fourth film layer further comprises a cold-seal adhesive.

18 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said first film layer is an outer film layer.

19 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said fourth film layer is an inner film layer.

20 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said film has a thickness of from about 0.75-3.5 mils.

21 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 1, wherein said film further comprises;

at least one first folded side edge superimposed on said surface-roughened portion, a top first seal edge portion and an opposite bottom second seal edge portion in parallel with said top first seal edge portion, and a third seal portion disposed perpendicular between said top first seal edge portion and said bottom second seal edge portion and parallel to said at least one first folded side edge therein defining a package; and

wherein said package comprises a tear-initiation area comprising said surface-roughened portion and a directional tear zone comprising said at least one score-line.

22 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 21, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a cold-seal.

23 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 21, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a heat-seal.

24 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film comprising;

(a) a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer, and a fourth film layer, wherein said first film layer comprises a first biaxially-oriented polymer selected from the group consisting of a polyester, a polyolefin, a polyamide and a blend thereof, and said first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion on an external surface of said first film layer;

(b) wherein said second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between said first film layer and said third film layer;

(c) wherein said third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between said second film layer and said fourth film layer of said film, said barrier material is a metallic coating having a thickness of from about 200-700 Å;

(d) wherein said fourth film layer comprises a second biaxially-oriented polymer selected from the group consisting of a polyester, a polyolefin, a polyamide and a blend thereof, said fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface includes at least one score-line; and

(e) wherein said surface-roughened pattern and said score-line intersect at least one axis drawn between both said first film layer and said fourth film layer wherein said at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of said first film layer or said fourth film layer when said film is positioned in a lay flat condition.

25 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-10% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

26 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 25, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-5% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

27 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, further comprising a fifth film layer positioned between said third film layer and said fourth film layer, wherein said fifth film layer is an adhesive.

28 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said at least one score-line has a depth of from about 50-95% of the thickness of said fourth film layer.

29 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said at least one score-line is continuous.

30 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said at least one score-line is non-continuous.

31 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said at least one score-line is formed by optical ablation.

32 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein both said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide and a blend thereof.

33 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are the same biaxially-oriented polymer.

34 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said barrier material is an oxygen barrier and said film has an oxygen transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 cm³/100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM D-3985-81 test method.

35 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said barrier material is a water vapor barrier and said film has a water vapor transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 g./100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM F-1249 test method.

36 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of metal, metal oxide, organometallic, ceramic and mixtures thereof.

37 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 36, wherein said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of aluminum, zinc, nickel, copper, bronze, gold, silver, tin, and alloys thereof.

38 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said first film layer is an outer film layer and said fourth film layer is an inner film layer.

39 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 24, wherein said film further comprises;

at least one first folded side edge superimposed on said surface-roughened portion, a top first seal edge portion and an opposite bottom second seal edge portion in parallel with said top first seal edge portion, and a third seal portion disposed perpendicular between said top first seal edge portion and said bottom second seal edge portion and parallel with said at least one first folded side edge therein defining a package; and

wherein said package comprises a tear-initiation area comprising said surface-roughened portion and a directional tear zone comprising said at least one score-line.

40 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 39, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a cold-seal.

41 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 39, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a heat-seal.

42 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film comprising;

(a) a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer, and a fourth film layer, wherein said first film layer comprises at least a first biaxially-oriented polymer selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof, and said first film layer is an outer film layer and said first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface of said first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion;

(b) wherein said second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between said first film layer and said third film layer;

(c) wherein said third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between said second film layer and said fourth film layer of said film, said barrier material is a metallic coating on said external surface of said third film layer, wherein said metallic coating has a thickness of from about 200-700 Å and said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of metal, metal oxide, organometallic, ceramic and mixtures thereof and;

(d) wherein said fourth film layer comprises a second biaxially-oriented polymer selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof, said fourth film layer is an inner film layer and said fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface comprises at least one score-line; and

(e) wherein said surface-roughened portion and said score-line intersect at least one axis drawn between both said first film layer and said fourth film layer wherein said at least one axis is perpendicular to the plane of said first film layer or said fourth film layer when said film is positioned in a lay flat condition.

43 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-10% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

44 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 43, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-5% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

45 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, further comprising a fifth film layer positioned between said third film layer and said fourth film layer, wherein said fifth film layer is an adhesive.

46 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said at least one score-line has a depth of from about 50-95% of the thickness of said fourth film layer.

47 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said at least one score-line is continuous.

48 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said at least one score-line is non-continuous.

49 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said at least one score-line is formed by optical ablation.

50 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein both said first biaxially-oriented polymer and said second biaxially-oriented polymer are the same biaxially-oriented polymer.

51 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said barrier material is an oxygen barrier and said film has an oxygen transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 cm³/100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM D-3985-81 test method.

52 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said barrier material is a water vapor barrier and said film has a water vapor transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 g./100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM F-1249 test method.

53 (Rejected). A flexible multilayer packaging film according to Claim 42, wherein said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of aluminum, zinc, nickel, copper, bronze, gold, silver, tin, and alloys thereof.

54 (Rejected). A package comprising;

(a) a flexible multilayer packaging film comprising;

(i) a first film layer, a second film layer, a third film layer, and a fourth film layer,

wherein said first film layer comprises at least a first biaxially-oriented polymer selected

from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof, said first film layer is an outer film layer and said first film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface of said first film layer comprises a surface-roughened portion;

- (ii) wherein said second film layer comprises an adhesive and is positioned between said first film layer and said third film layer;
- (iii) wherein said third film layer comprises a barrier material and is positioned between said second film layer and said fourth film layer of said film, wherein said barrier material is a metallic coating on said internal surface of said fourth film layer, wherein said metallic coating has a thickness of from about 200-700 Å and said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of metal, metal oxide, organometallic, ceramic and mixtures thereof;
- (iv) wherein said fourth film layer comprises a second biaxially-oriented polymer selected from the group consisting of a polyethylene terephthalate, a polypropylene, a polyamide, and a blend thereof, said fourth film layer is an inner film layer and said fourth film layer has an internal surface and an opposing external surface, wherein said external surface includes at least one score-line;
- (b) wherein said package further comprises at least one first folded side edge, a top first seal edge portion and an opposite bottom second seal edge portion in parallel with said top first seal edge portion, and a third seal portion disposed perpendicular between said first seal edge portion and said bottom second seal edge portion and parallel with said at least one first folded side edge;
- (c) a tear-initiation area;
- (d) a directional tear zone; and

(e) wherein said first folded side edge is superimposed on said surface roughening portion of said first film layer of said packaging film.

55 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-10% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

56 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 55, wherein said film has an unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage in the machine direction and transverse direction of between 0-5% at 85° C. as measured in accordance with ASTM D-2732-96.

57 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said film further comprises a fifth film layer positioned between said third film layer and said fourth film layer, wherein said fifth film layer is an adhesive.

58 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said barrier material is an oxygen barrier and said film has an oxygen transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 cm³/100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM D-3985-81 test method.

59 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said barrier material is a water vapor barrier and said film has a water vapor transmission rate of from about 0.01-1.00 g./100 in.² (0.1550-15.50 cm³/m²) as measured in accordance with ASTM F-1249 test method.

60 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said metallic coating is a material selected from the group consisting of aluminum, zinc, nickel, copper, bronze, gold, silver, tin, and alloys thereof.

61 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said at least one score-line has a depth of from about 50-95% of the thickness of said fourth film layer.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

62 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said at least one score-line is continuous.

63 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said at least one score-line is non-continuous.

64 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said at least one score-line is formed by optical ablation.

65 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a cold-seal.

66 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, wherein said top first seal edge portion, said bottom second seal edge portion, or said third seal edge portion includes a heat-seal.

67 (Rejected). A package according to Claim 54, further comprising a second folded side edge opposite and parallel to said at least one first folded side edge.

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Evidence Appendices

Submitted as separate appendices with this appeal brief appellant has provided copies of the following:

- Evidence Appendix A: Andersen, et al. (U.S. Patent No. 5,660,903) ("Andersen") (60 pages)
- Evidence Appendix B: Gehrke (U.S. Patent No. 5,783,266) ("Gehrke") (10 pages)
- Evidence Appendix C: ASTM International, ASTM D 2732-96, "Standard Test Method for Unrestrained Linear Thermal Shrinkage of Plastic Film and Sheeting" (5 pages)

Application No. 10/689,478
Technology Center / Art Unit 1772
Appeal Brief for 20 February 2007 Notice of Appeal
Response to 19 October 2006 Office Action and
9 April 2007 Notice of Panel Decision from Pre-Appeal Brief Review
Attorney Docket No. 20717

Related Proceedings Appendix

None.

Appellant knows of no related proceedings. Therefore, appellant is not submitting any such copies of decisions with this appeal, and appellant is including this Related Proceedings Appendix with the indication of none.

United States Patent [19]

Andersen et al.

[11] Patent Number: 5,660,903

[45] Date of Patent: *Aug. 26, 1997

[54] SHEETS HAVING A HIGHLY INORGANICALLY FILLED ORGANIC POLYMER MATRIX

1,223,834 4/1917 Sanger .
1,234,692 7/1917 Poznanski .

(List continued on next page.)

[75] Inventors: Per Just Andersen; Simon K. Hodson, both of Santa Barbara, Calif.

[73] Assignee: E. Khashoggi Industries, Santa Barbara, Calif.

[*] Notice: The term of this patent shall not extend beyond the expiration date of Pat. No. 5,580,624.

[21] Appl. No.: 474,495

[22] Filed: Jun. 7, 1995

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 929,898, Aug. 11, 1992, abandoned, and a continuation of Ser. No. 152,354, Nov. 19, 1993, Pat. No. 5,508,072, which is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 95,662, Jul. 21, 1993, Pat. No. 5,385,764, and a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 982,383, Nov. 23, 1992, abandoned, and a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 101,500, Aug. 3, 1993, said Ser. No. 152,354, is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 929,898, said Ser. No. 95,662, is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 929,898, said Ser. No. 982,383, is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 929,898, said Ser. No. 101,500, is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 929,898.

[51] Int. Cl⁶ B32B 3/26; B32B 3/28; B32B 5/16

[52] U.S. Cl. 428/36.4; 428/43; 428/152; 428/182; 428/317.9; 428/339; 428/532; 428/906

[58] Field of Search 428/152, 182, 428/220, 294, 312.4, 313.9, 317.9, 339, 532, 906, 36.4, 43; 524/4, 425, 446, 447, 451, 498, 650

[56] References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

109,669 11/1870 Rowland .

128,980 7/1872 Rowland .

591,168 10/1897 Heinzelung .

882,538 3/1908 Sargent .

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0003481 8/1979 European Pat. Off. .
0006390 A1 1/1980 European Pat. Off. .
0263723 A2 4/1988 European Pat. Off. .
0265745 A2 5/1988 European Pat. Off. .
0271853 B2 6/1988 European Pat. Off. .

(List continued on next page.)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

J. Francis Young, *Macro-Defect-Free Cement: A Review*, Mat. Res. Soc. Symp. Proc. vol. 179, pp. 101-121. (no date available).

(List continued on next page.)

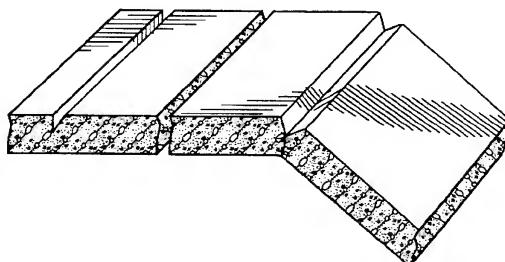
Primary Examiner—Marion E. McCamish

Assistant Examiner—Blaine R. Copenheaver
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Workman, Nydegger & Seeley

[57] ABSTRACT

Compositions and methods for manufacturing sheets having a highly inorganically filled matrix. Suitable inorganically filled mixtures are prepared by mixing together an organic polymer binder, water, one or more inorganic aggregate materials, fibers, and optional admixtures in the correct proportions in order to form a sheet which has the desired performance criteria. The inorganically filled mixtures are formed into sheets by first extruding the mixtures and the passing the extruded mixtures between a set of rollers. The rolled sheets are dried in an accelerated manner to form a substantially hardened sheet, such as by heated rollers and/or a drying chamber. The inorganically filled sheets may have properties substantially similar to sheets presently made from traditional materials like paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, or metal. Such sheets can be rolled, pressed, scored, perforated, folded, and glued. They have especial utility in the mass production of containers, particularly food and beverage containers.

87 Claims, 12 Drawing Sheets



U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

1,847,974	8/1932	Hammenecker .	4,080,213	3/1978	Mori et al. .
1,932,150	10/1933	Tada .	4,084,980	4/1978	Motoki .
1,954,117	4/1934	Caldwell .	4,089,691	5/1978	Cummisford et al. .
1,965,538	7/1934	Stewart .	4,093,690	6/1978	Murray .
2,045,099	6/1936	Pond .	4,117,059	9/1978	Murray .
2,170,102	8/1939	Thompson .	4,117,060	9/1978	Murray .
2,205,735	6/1940	Scherer .	4,124,550	11/1978	Kobayashi et al. .
2,262,458	11/1941	Bastoli et al. .	4,132,555	1/1979	Barable .
2,307,629	1/1943	MacLodlowe .	4,133,619	1/1979	Wise .
2,432,971	12/1947	Ruthman et al. .	4,135,940	1/1979	Peltier .
2,496,895	2/1950	Staley .	4,149,550	4/1979	Green et al. .
2,549,507	4/1951	Morgan et al. .	4,157,998	6/1979	Bernisson et al. .
2,629,667	2/1953	Kavaler .	4,159,302	6/1979	Greve et al. .
2,700,615	1/1955	Heismer .	4,172,154	10/1979	von Rymon Lipinski .
2,793,957	5/1957	Mangold et al. .	4,185,923	1/1980	Bouette et al. .
2,820,713	1/1958	Wagner .	4,188,231	2/1980	Valore .
2,837,435	6/1958	Miller et al. .	4,209,336	6/1980	Previte .
2,917,778	12/1959	Lyon, Jr. et al. .	4,210,490	7/1980	Taylor .
2,959,489	11/1960	Wagner .	4,225,247	9/1980	Hodson .
2,968,561	1/1961	Birnkraut .	4,225,357	9/1980	Hodson .
3,006,615	10/1961	Mason, Jr. .	4,225,383	9/1980	McReynolds .
3,027,266	3/1962	Wikun .	4,230,502	10/1980	Lustig et al. .
3,030,258	4/1962	Wagner .	4,233,080	11/1980	Koepell .
3,042,578	7/1962	Denning .	4,233,366	11/1980	Baehr et al. .
3,052,595	9/1962	Pye .	4,234,344	11/1980	Tinsley et al. .
3,117,014	1/1964	Klug .	4,239,716	12/1980	Ishida et al. .
3,149,986	9/1964	Zeimanoff .	4,249,991	2/1981	Boes et al. .
3,169,877	2/1965	Bartoli et al. .	4,257,710	3/1981	Delcoigne et al. .
3,215,549	11/1965	Ericsson .	4,261,754	4/1981	Kriechel et al. .
3,305,613	2/1967	Spence .	4,272,198	6/1981	Velikov et al. .
3,306,961	2/1967	Spence .	4,279,695	7/1981	Winterbottom .
3,356,779	12/1967	Schulze .	4,299,799	11/1981	Greenberg .
3,393,261	7/1968	Hertzig et al. .	4,303,694	12/1981	Heas, Sr. et al. .
3,432,317	3/1969	Kelly et al. .	4,305,758	12/1981	Powers et al. .
3,468,993	9/1969	Bierlich .	4,306,059	12/1981	Yokobayashi et al. .
3,470,005	9/1969	Flachsenberg et al. .	4,310,996	1/1982	Mulvey et al. .
3,492,383	1/1970	Simunic .	4,326,891	4/1982	Sedler .
3,520,707	7/1970	Steinberg et al. .	4,328,136	5/1982	Blount .
3,526,172	9/1970	Stuart .	4,329,177	5/1982	George .
3,558,070	1/1971	Gabriels .	4,353,747	10/1982	Birchall et al. .
3,579,366	5/1971	Rehmdanz .	4,362,679	12/1982	Malinowski .
3,683,760	8/1972	Silva .	4,370,161	1/1983	Powers et al. .
3,697,366	10/1972	Hardwick et al. .	4,373,957	2/1983	Pedersen .
3,753,749	8/1973	Nutt .	4,377,440	3/1983	Gasland .
3,754,954	8/1973	Gabriel .	4,378,271	3/1983	Hargreaves et al. .
3,759,729	9/1973	Fahn .	4,379,198	4/1983	Jaeschke et al. .
3,770,859	11/1973	Bevan .	4,383,862	5/1983	Dyson .
3,806,571	4/1974	Ronmark et al. .	4,394,930	7/1983	Korpmann .
3,827,895	8/1974	Copeland .	4,406,703	9/1983	Guthrie et al. .
3,841,885	10/1974	Jakel .	4,410,366	10/1983	Birchall .
3,857,715	12/1974	Humphrey .	4,410,571	10/1983	Korpmann .
3,902,912	9/1975	Wolf .	4,415,366	11/1983	Copenning .
3,904,341	9/1975	Putti .	4,427,610	1/1984	Muray .
3,914,359	10/1975	Bevan .	4,428,775	1/1984	Johnson et al. .
3,917,781	11/1975	Gabriel et al. .	4,445,970	5/1984	Post et al. .
3,927,163	12/1975	Gabriel et al. .	4,462,835	7/1984	Cst .
3,954,490	5/1976	Cockram .	4,497,662	2/1985	Chisholm et al. .
3,968,004	7/1976	Coffey et al. .	4,508,595	4/1985	Gasland .
3,989,534	11/1976	Plungian et al. .	4,524,828	6/1985	Sabins et al. .
4,002,482	1/1977	Coenen .	4,529,653	7/1985	Hargreaves et al. .
4,017,321	4/1977	Reighter .	4,529,662	7/1985	Lancaster et al. .
4,017,324	4/1977	Eggers .	4,529,663	7/1985	Lancaster et al. .
4,040,851	8/1977	Ziegler .	4,533,393	8/1985	Neuschaeffer et al. .
4,043,862	8/1977	Roberts .	4,545,854	10/1985	Gomez et al. .
4,044,166	8/1977	Koizumi .	4,549,930	10/1985	Dessauer .
4,070,196	1/1978	Kraak et al. .	4,551,384	11/1985	Aston et al. .
4,070,199	1/1978	Downing et al. .	4,552,463	11/1985	Hodson .
4,073,658	2/1978	Ohtani et al. .	4,585,486	4/1986	Fujita et al. .
4,076,846	2/1978	Nakatsuka et al. .	4,588,443	5/1986	Bache .
4,077,809	3/1978	Plungian et al. .	4,595,623	6/1986	Du Pont et al. .
			4,613,627	9/1986	Sherman et al. .
			4,623,150	11/1986	Moehlman et al. .

4,636,345	1/1987	Jensen et al.	5,089,186	2/1992	Moore et al.
4,637,860	1/1987	Harper et al.	5,095,054	3/1992	Lay et al.
4,640,715	2/1987	Heitzmann et al.	5,102,596	4/1992	Lempfer et al.
4,642,137	2/1987	Heitzman et al.	5,104,487	4/1992	Taggart et al.
4,650,523	3/1987	Kikuchi et al.	5,104,669	4/1992	Wolke et al.
4,655,981	4/1987	Nielsen	5,106,880	4/1992	Miller et al.
4,673,438	6/1987	Wittwer et al.	5,108,677	4/1992	Ayres
4,707,187	11/1987	Isuda et al.	5,108,679	4/1992	Rinsche et al.
4,710,422	12/1987	Fredenucci	5,110,413	5/1992	Steer
4,711,669	12/1987	Paul et al.	5,122,231	6/1992	Anderson
4,735,660	4/1988	Cane	5,126,013	6/1992	Waker et al.
4,746,481	5/1988	Schmidt	5,126,014	6/1992	Chung
4,749,444	6/1988	Lorz et al.	5,132,155	7/1992	Singh et al.
4,753,710	6/1988	Langley et al.	5,134,179	7/1992	Felegi, Jr. et al.
4,754,589	7/1988	Leth	5,141,797	8/1992	Wheeler
4,755,494	7/1988	Ruber	5,151,130	9/1992	Croft et al.
4,772,439	9/1988	Trevino-Gonzalez	5,153,037	10/1992	Altieri
4,784,693	11/1988	Kirkland et al.	5,154,771	10/1992	Wada et al.
4,786,670	11/1988	Tracy et al.	5,156,718	10/1992	Neubert
4,789,244	12/1988	Dunton et al.	5,160,368	11/1992	Begovich
4,797,161	1/1989	Kirchmayr et al.	5,160,676	11/1992	Singh et al.
4,799,961	1/1989	Friborg	5,167,894	12/1992	Baumgarten
4,814,012	3/1989	Paul et al.	5,178,730	1/1993	Bixler et al.
4,833,191	5/1989	Bushway et al.	5,184,995	2/1993	Kuchenbecker
4,836,940	6/1989	Alexander	5,185,382	2/1993	Neumann et al.
4,840,672	6/1989	Baes	5,186,990	2/1993	Starcevich
4,842,649	6/1989	Heitzman et al.	5,194,209	3/1993	Koch et al.
4,861,649	8/1989	Browne	5,206,087	4/1993	Tokawa et al.
4,863,655	9/1989	Lacourte et al.	5,208,267	5/1993	Neumann et al.
4,868,142	9/1989	Waisala et al.	5,224,595	7/1993	Sugimoto et al.
4,872,913	10/1989	Dunton et al.	5,232,496	8/1993	Jennings et al.
4,879,173	11/1989	Randall	5,240,561	8/1993	Kaliski
4,888,059	12/1989	Yamaguchi et al.	5,248,702	9/1993	Neumann et al.
4,889,428	12/1989	Hodson	5,252,271	10/1993	Jeffs
4,892,589	1/1990	Kirkland et al.	5,256,711	10/1993	Tokawa et al.
4,895,598	1/1990	Hedberg et al.	5,258,430	11/1993	Bastoli et al.
4,912,069	3/1990	Ruben	5,264,030	11/1993	Tanabe et al.
4,919,758	4/1990	Wagle et al.	5,266,366	11/1993	Miller
4,921,250	5/1990	Ayers	5,268,187	12/1993	Quinlan
4,923,665	5/1990	Andersen et al.	5,269,845	12/1993	Gruau et al.
4,925,530	5/1990	Sinclair et al.	5,272,181	12/1993	Bechmer et al.
4,927,573	5/1990	Alpar et al.	5,273,821	12/1993	Olson et al.
4,927,655	5/1990	Ito	5,275,774	1/1994	Bahr et al.
4,927,656	5/1990	Ito	5,277,764	1/1994	Johansson et al.
4,939,192	7/1990	t'Sas	5,278,194	1/1994	Ticker et al.
4,941,922	7/1990	Snyder	5,278,730	1/1994	Bixler et al.
4,944,595	7/1990	Hodson	5,279,658	1/1994	Aung
4,948,429	8/1990	Arfai	5,284,672	2/1994	Ito
4,952,278	8/1990	Gregory et al.	5,288,318	2/1994	Mayer et al.
4,957,558	9/1990	Ueda et al.	5,288,765	2/1994	Bastoli et al.
4,957,754	9/1990	Munk et al.	5,290,350	3/1994	Bernard et al.
4,963,603	10/1990	Felegi, Jr. et al.	5,290,355	3/1994	Jakel
4,975,473	12/1990	Keneda et al.	5,298,273	3/1994	Ito
4,979,992	12/1990	Bachs	5,300,333	4/1994	Wilkerson et al.
4,985,119	1/1991	Vinson et al.	5,308,879	5/1994	Akamatu et al.
4,999,056	3/1991	Rasmussen	5,314,754	5/1994	Knight
5,017,268	5/1991	Clitheroe et al.	5,317,037	5/1994	Golden et al.
5,021,093	6/1991	Beshay	5,317,119	5/1994	Ayres
5,030,282	7/1991	Matsuhashi et al.	5,320,669	6/1994	Lim et al.
5,035,930	7/1991	Lacourte et al.	5,346,541	9/1994	Goldman et al.
5,039,378	8/1991	Pommier et al.	5,360,586	11/1994	Wyatt et al.
5,039,560	8/1991	Durgin et al.	5,362,776	11/1994	Bareberg et al.
5,043,196	8/1991	Lacourte et al.	5,362,777	11/1994	Tomka
5,047,086	9/1991	Hayakawa et al.	5,372,877	12/1994	Kamankaril
5,049,237	9/1991	Bohm et al.	5,506,046	4/1996	Andersen et al.
5,051,217	9/1991	Alpar et al.	5,508,072	4/1996	Andersen et al.
5,061,346	10/1991	Taggart et al.			428/34.5
5,071,512	12/1991	Bixler et al.			428/34.5
5,076,985	12/1991	Koch et al.			
5,082,500	1/1992	Nachtman et al.			
5,085,366	2/1992	Durgin et al.			
5,085,707	2/1992	Bundy et al.			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0290007 A1	11/1988	European Pat. Off.
0304401 B1	2/1989	European Pat. Off.
0 118 240	7/1989	European Pat. Off.
0340707 A2	11/1989	European Pat. Off.

0340765	11/1989	European Pat. Off.
0370913 B1	5/1990	European Pat. Off.
0405146 B1	1/1991	European Pat. Off.
0447797	9/1991	European Pat. Off.
0453980 A2	10/1991	European Pat. Off.
0497151 A1	8/1992	European Pat. Off.
0546956 A2	6/1993	European Pat. Off.
0551954 A2	7/1993	European Pat. Off.
0608031	7/1994	European Pat. Off.
453555	10/1996	France .
1278195	2/1981	France .
2642731	2/1989	France .
3011330	3/1980	Germany .
2841172	4/1980	Germany .
3420195 A1	12/1985	Germany .
4008862 C1	11/1991	Germany .
47-20190	9/1972	Japan .
51-2729	1/1976	Japan .
53-16730	2/1978	Japan .
54-48821	3/1979	Japan .
54-31320	3/1979	Japan .
55-37407	3/1980	Japan .
55-100256	7/1980	Japan .
56-17965	2/1981	Japan .
58-120555	7/1983	Japan .
60-36055	8/1983	Japan .
60-36056	8/1983	Japan .
60-260484	12/1983	Japan .
60-264375	12/1985	Japan .
62-39204	2/1987	Japan .
62-46941	2/1987	Japan .
62-253407	11/1987	Japan .
63-123851	5/1988	Japan .
63-210082	8/1988	Japan .
63-218589	9/1988	Japan .
63-248759	10/1988	Japan .
63-310780	12/1988	Japan .
64-37478	2/1989	Japan .
2-51460	2/1990	Japan .
2-141484	5/1990	Japan .
2-190304	7/1990	Japan .
3-80141	4/1991	Japan .
3-153551	7/1991	Japan .
3-187962	8/1991	Japan .
3-202310	9/1991	Japan .
3-202313	9/1991	Japan .
3-208847	9/1991	Japan .
4-73034	3/1992	Japan .
5-320401	12/1993	Japan .
6-32386	2/1994	Japan .
9100590	11/1992	Netherlands .
490820	8/1993	United Kingdom .
2050459	1/1981	United Kingdom .
1584387	2/1981	United Kingdom .
2086748	5/1982	United Kingdom .
2192392	1/1988	United Kingdom .
2214516	6/1989	United Kingdom .
2208651	12/1989	United Kingdom .
2220934	1/1990	United Kingdom .
W087/00828	2/1987	WIPO .
W089/02225	3/1989	WIPO .
W091/12186	8/1991	WIPO .
W092/04408	3/1992	WIPO .
W093/01242	7/1994	WIPO .

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Alexanderson, *Self-Smoothing Floors Based on Polymer Cement Concrete*, Concrete International (Jan. 1990).

Andersen, *Control and Monitoring of Concrete Production—A Study of Particle Packing and Rheology*, The Danish Academy of Technical Sciences (1990).

Andersen, *Effect of Organic Superplasticizing Admixtures and Their Components on Zeta Potential and Related Properties of Cement Materials*, Pennsylvania State University (1987).

Andersen, *Effects of W/C-Ratio and Dispersion on the Pore Size Distribution of Cement Paste and Concrete*, Paper prepared for MRL by Per Just Andersen (Aug. 1988).

Andersen, *Rheology of Cement Paste, Mortar and Concrete*, (No date available).

Andersen, et al., *Tailoring of Cement-Bound Materials By the Use of Packing and Rheological Models* American Ceramic Society (1988).

Andersen, *Tailoring of Concrete Materials*, R&H Annual Review (1988).

Ashby, *Materials Selection in Engineering Design*, Indian Journal of Technology, vol. 28, 217-225 (Jun.-Aug. 1990).

Ashby, *Overview No. 80: On the Engineering Properties of Materials*, Acta Metall., vol. 3, No. 5, 1273-1293 (1989).

Attwood, *Paperboard, The Wiley Encyclopedia of Packaging Technology* 500-506 (Marilyn Bakker ed., 1986).

Bach, *Cement-Based Products Processed the Plastics Way*.

(No date available).

Bach, *Densified Cement/Ultra-Fine Particle-Based Materials*, Presented at the Second International Conference on Superplasticizers in Concrete, Ottawa, Canada (Jun. 10-12, 1981).

Bajza, *On The Factors Influencing the Strength of Cement Compacts*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 2, 67-78 (1972).

Balaguru, et al., *Flexural Behavior of Slurry Infiltrated Fiber Concrete (SIFCON) Made Using Condensed Silica Fume*, (no date available).

Baum, et al., *Paper, Kirk-Othmer Concise Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology*, 834-836 (Martin Grayson ed., 1985).

Benbow, et al., *The Extrusion Mechanics of Pastes-The Influence of Paste Formulation on Extrusion Parameters*, Chemical Engineering Science, vol. 42, No. 9, 2151-2162 (1987).

Berger et al., *Acceleration of Hydration of Calcium Silicates by Carbon Dioxide Treatment*, Nature Physical Science, vol. 240 (Nov. 6, 1972).

Biomat 32-Production Unit for Natural Packaging, *Starch Foam Dishes at Burger King's*, (no date available).

Blaha, *Ideas in Concrete*, Concrete Products (Sep. 1992).

Brady, et al., *Materials Handbook*, 588-594 (1991).

Brown, et al., *An Investigation of a High Speed Shear Mixer on Selected Pastes and Mortars*, Mat. Res. Soc. Symp. Proc., vol. 137 (1989).

Bukowski et al., *Reactivity and Strength Development of CO₂ Activated Non-Hydraulic Calcium Silicates*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 9, 57-68 (1979).

Clauson-Kaas et al., *Ekstrudering af fiberbeton*-delrapport, Byggeteknik, Teknologisk Institut (Jan. 1987).

English Translation: Clauson-Kaas et al., *Extrusion of Fiber Concrete-Interim Report*, Department of Building Technology, Technological Institute of Denmark.

Clauson-Kaas, *Opsprojekt Glasfiberbeton i Byggeriet* (1987) (No Translation).

Colleopardi et al., *Influence of Polymerization of Sulfonated Naphthalene Condensate and its Interaction With Cement*, (no date available).

Davidson, et al., *Water-Soluble Resins*, New York: Reinhold Publishing Corp., Chapman & Hall, Ltd., London. (no date available).

Dow Plastics, *Thermoforming Process Guide*. (no date available).

Eriksen et al., *Foam Stability Experiments on Solutions Containing Superplasticizing and Air-Entrainning Agents for Concrete*, The Technological Institute, Department of Building Technology, Taastrup, Denmark. (no date available).

Ferretti, *Distributed Reinforcement Concrete Pipes: An Innovative Product*, Concrete International (May 1993).

Fordos, *Natural or Modified Cellulose Fibers As Reinforcement in Cement Composites*, Concrete Technology and Design, vol. 5, Natural Fiber Reinforced Cement and Concrete (1988).

Greminger, et al., *Alkyl and Hydroxyalkylcellulose*, Dow Chemical U.S.A., Midland, Oregon. (no date available).

Hewlett, *Physico-Chemical Mechanisms of Admixtures*, Lecture, CGLI Advanced Concrete Technology Course, Cement and Concrete Association Training Center. (no date available).

Hlavac, *The Technology of Glass and Ceramics*, Glass Science and Technology, 4: The Technology of Glass and Ceramics, Elsevier Publishing (1983).

Hyland, *F-Flute Inches Its Way Into Folding Carton Market*, Paperboard Packaging, 28-29 (May 1993).

Johansen, et al., *Particle Packing and Concrete Properties*, Materials Science of Concrete II, 111-147. (no date available).

Jones, et al., *Raw Materials Processing*, Ceramics: Industrial Processing and Testing, Iowa State University Press (1972).

Kline, *Paper and Paperboard Manufacturing and Converting Fundamentals*, 19-28 (2d ed. 1982).

Kline, *Corrugating Operations and Raw Materials*, in *Paper and Paperboard: Manufacturing and Converting Fundamentals*, 184-195, 2nd ed. (1991).

Knab, et al., *Effects of Maximum Void Size and Aggregate Characteristics on the Strength of Mortar*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 13, 383-390 (1983).

Lawrence, *The Properties of Cement Paste Compacted Under High Pressure: Research Report 19*, Cement and Concrete Association Research Report 19 (Jun. 1969).

Lechner, et al., *Strength of Neat Cement Pastes Molded Under Pressure*, Journal of the American Concrete Institute Concrete Briefs (Feb. 1961).

Lewis, et al., *Microstructure-Property Relationships in Macro-Defect-Free Cement*, MRS Bulletin (Mar. 1993).

Lewis, *Condensed Chemical Dictionary*, 870 (12th ed. 1993).

Litvan et al., *Particulate Admixture for Enhanced Freeze-Thaw Resistance of Concrete*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 8, 53-60, Pergamon Press, Inc. (no date).

Manson et al., *Use of Polymers in Highway Concrete*, National Cooperative Highway Research Program Report 190 (1978).

Maries, *The Activation of Portland Cement by Carbon Dioxide*. (no date).

Maycock et al., *Carbonation of Hydrated Calcium Silicates*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 4, 69-76 (1974).

Miyake et al., *Superplasticized Concrete Using Refined Lignosulfate and its Action Mechanism*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 15, 295-302 (1985).

Naaman, et al., *Tensile Stress-Strain Properties of SIFCON*, ACI Materials Journal (May-Jun. 1989).

Niel, *Supplementary Paper II-117. The Influence of Alkali-Carbonate on the Hydration of Cement* (1968).

Purton, *The Effect of Sand Grading On The Calcium Silicate Brick Reaction*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 4, 13-29 (1974).

Putnam, et al., *Papermaking Additives*, Kirk-Othmer Concise Encyclopedia of Chemical Technology, 836-837 (Martin Grayson ed., 1985).

Robinson, *Extrusion Defects*. (no date).

Rosenberg, et al., *A New Mineral Admixture for High-Strength Concrete—Proposed Mechanism for Strength Enhancement*, Second International Conference on the Use of Fly Ash, Silica Fume, Slag and Natural Pozzolans in Concrete (Apr. 21-25, 1986).

Roy, *New Strong Cement Materials: Chemically Bonded Ceramics*, Science, vol. 235, 6 (Feb. 1987).

Roy, et al., *Very High Strength Cement Phases Prepared by Hot Pressing and Other High Pressure Techniques*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 2, 349-366 (1972).

Roy, et al., *Processing of Optimized Cements and Concretes Via Particle Packing*, MRS Bulletin (Mar. 1993).

Sequa Chemicals, Inc., Technical Data, *Sureze® 700 Series Insolubilizers Coating Additive*. (no date).

Sikora, *Paper, The Wiley Encyclopedia of Packaging Technology*, 497-500 (Marilyn Bakker ed., 1986).

Skalny et al., *Low Water to Cement Ratio Concretes*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 3, 29-40 (1973).

Skalny, et al., *Properties of Cement Pastes Prepared by High Pressure Compaction*, ACI Journal, (Mar. 1970).

Soroushian et al., *Recycling of Wood and Paper in Cementitious Materials*, Mat. Res. Soc. Symp. Proc., vol. 266, (1992).

Staley Starch and Specialty Products Group, Technical Data, *Sta-Lok® 400 Cationic Potato Starch*. (no date).

Stix Concrete Solutions, *Scientific American* (Apr. 1993).

Strabo et al., *Cementbaserede Hybridkomposite*, Teknologisk Institut, Byggeteknik, TR-Project 1985-133/177-85.533 (1987).

English translation—Strabo, et al., *Cement-Based Hybrid Composites*, Technological Institute of Denmark, Department of Building Technology, TR-Project 1985-133/177-85.533 (1987).

Strabo, et al., *Fiberbeton Teknologi*, Teknologisk Institut, Byggeteknik, TR-Project 133/177-82.042 (1986).

English translation—Strabo, et al., *Fiber Concrete Technology*, Technological Institute of Denmark, Department of Building Technology, TR-Project 133/177-82.042 (1986).

Strabo, et al., *Ekstrudering af Fiberbeton*, Teknologisk Institut, Byggeteknik, TR-Project 1985-133/177-85.538 (Okt. 1987).

English translation—Strabo, et al., *Extrusion of Fiber Concrete*, Danish Technological Institute, Department of Building Technology, TR-Project 1985-133/177-85.538 (Oct. 1987).

Strabo, et al., *Nye Formgivningsmetoder til Fiberbeton*, Teknologisk Institut, Byggeteknik, TR-Project 1984-133/117-84.028 (Apr. 1987).

English translation—Strabo, et al., *New Design Methods for Fiber Concrete*, Technological Institute of Denmark, Department of Building Technology, TR-Project 1984-133/117-84.028 (Apr. 1987).

Studt, *New Advances Revive Interest In Cement-Based Materials*, R&D Magazine (Nov. 1992).

Sun et al., *The Composition of Hydrated DSP Cement Pastes*. (no date).

Suzuki et al., *Formation and Carbonation of C-S-H In water*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 15, 213-224 (1985).

Unwalla, et al., ed., *Recycled Materials for Making Concrete*, The Concrete Journal, vol. 53, No. 9 (Sep. 1979).

Verbeck, *Carbonation of Hydrated Portland Cement*, Cement and Concrete Special Technical Publication No. 203 (1958).

Vrana, *Khashoggi Kin Reported Planning Private Placement of Shares in New Container Firm* (Mar. 28, 1993).

Wagner, *Polymer Modification of Portland Cement Systems*, Chemtech (Feb. 1973).

Weinrich, *German Comes Up With Recycled Product to Replace Foam Chips*, (no date).

Weiss, et al., *High Tensile Cement Pastes as a Low-Energy Substitute for Metals, Plastics, Ceramics and Wood. Phase I: Preliminary Technological Evaluation*, CTL Project CR7851-4330, Final Report Prepared for U.S. Dept. of Energy (Nov. 1984).

Westman, et al., *The Packing of Particles* (1930).

Young, et al., *Introduction to MDF Cement Composites*, ACBM vol. 1, No. 2 (Fall 1989).

Yüdenfreund et al., *Hardened Portland Cement Pastes of Low Porosity. II. Exploratory Studies. Dimensional Changes*, Cement and Concrete Research, vol. 2, 331-348 (1972).

Zeneca, *Biopol, Nature's Plastic-Born from Nature, Back to Nature*, (no date).

Zukowski et al., *Rheology of Cementitious Systems*, MRS Bulletin (Mar. 1993).

Cementing the Future: A New Extrusion Technology, ACBM, vol. 6, No. 1 (Spring 1994).

The Coating Process for Paper (1993).

The Colcrete Process, Undated Publication.

Fiberbeton—nyt, Teknologisk Institut, Byggeteknik, Blad nr. 1 (Oct. 1987).

English translation—*Fiber Concrete News*, The Technological Institute of Denmark, Department of Building Technology, Pamphlet No. 1 (Oct. 1987).

Nye Metoder i Beton Kan Betyde Teknisk Knock-out For Plast (no date).

English translation—*New Method for Concrete May Mean Technical Knock-Out for Plastic*, The Engineer, No. 14 (1986).

Plastic-Forming Processes, (no date).

Report of the Panel on Solids Processing, (no date).

Thermoforming Process Guide, Dow Plastics (no date).

Zien In The Food Industry, Freeman Industries, Inc. (no date).

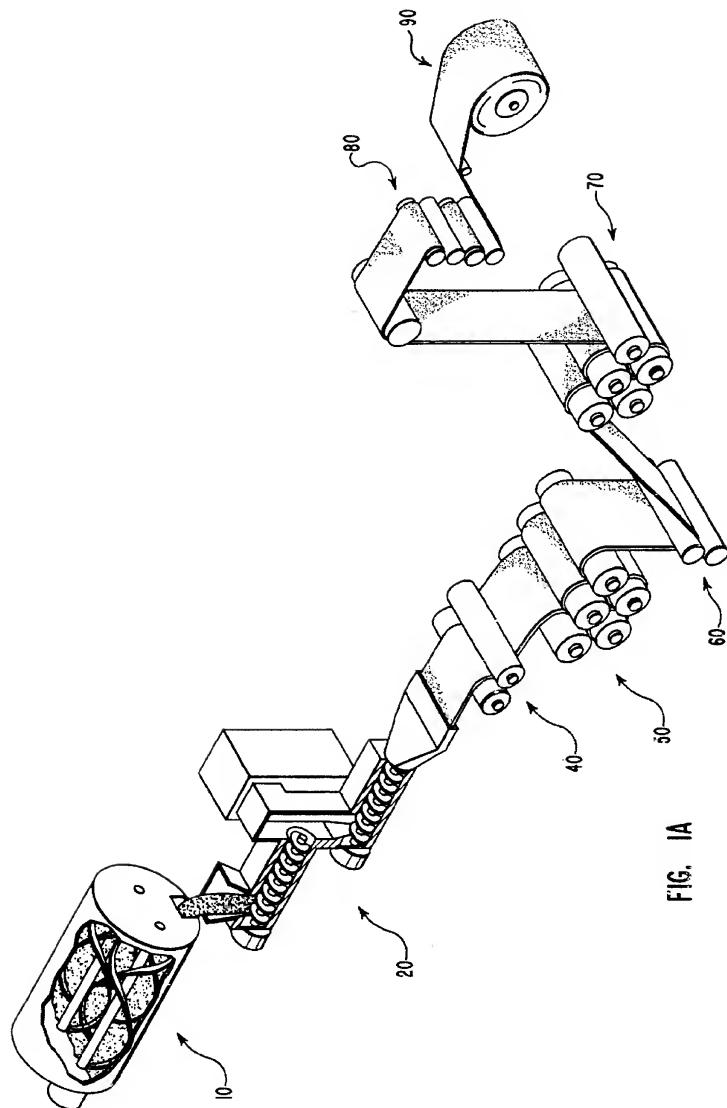
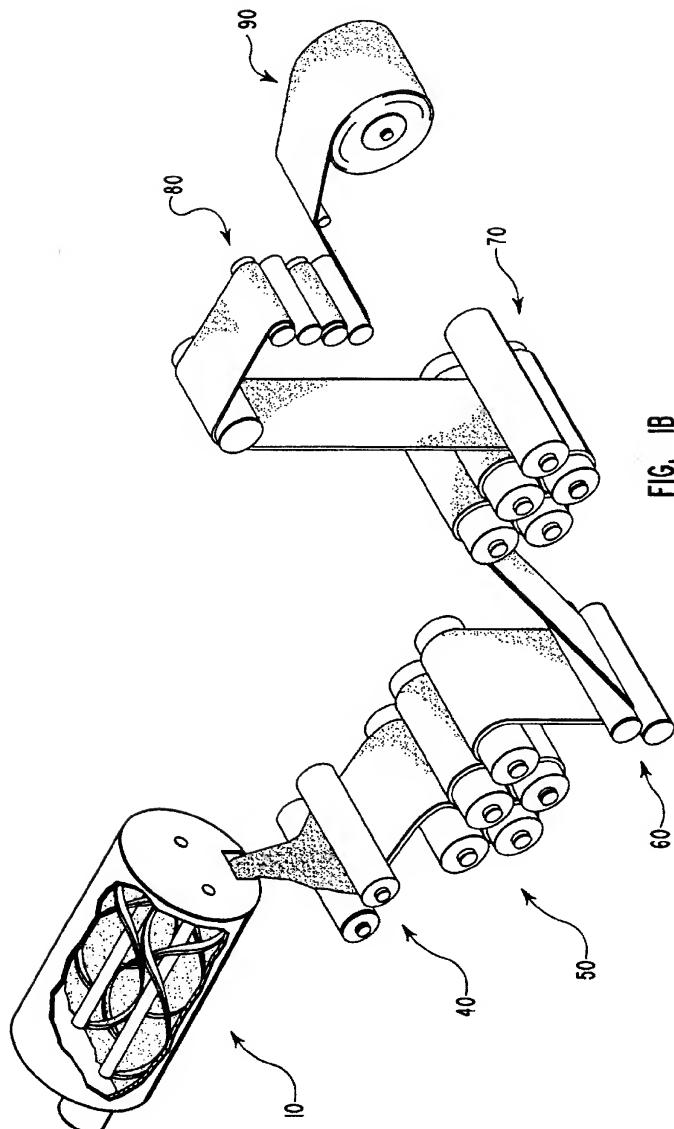
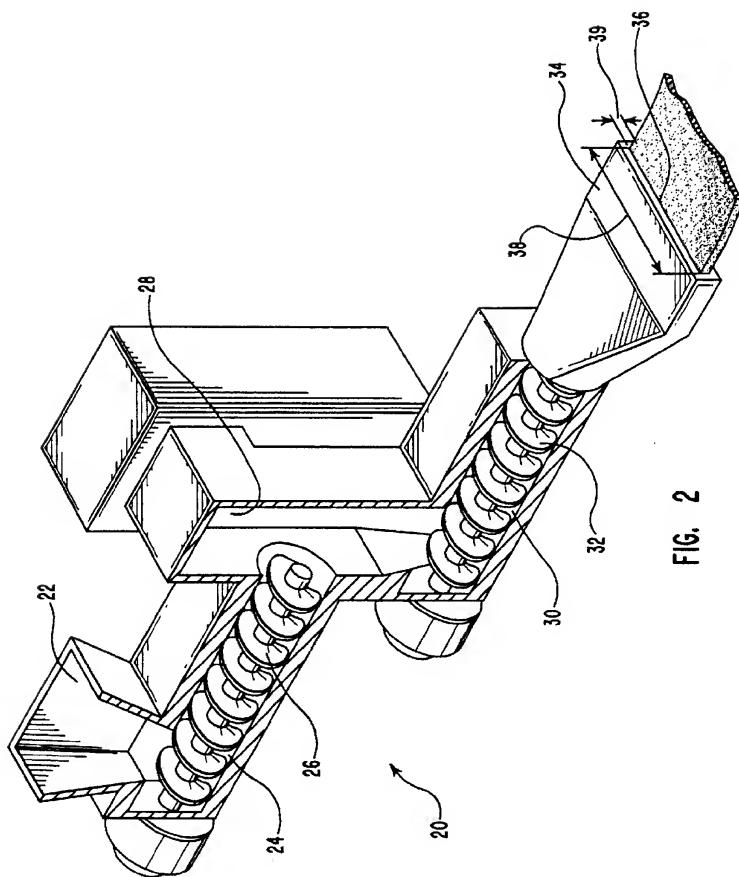


FIG. 1A





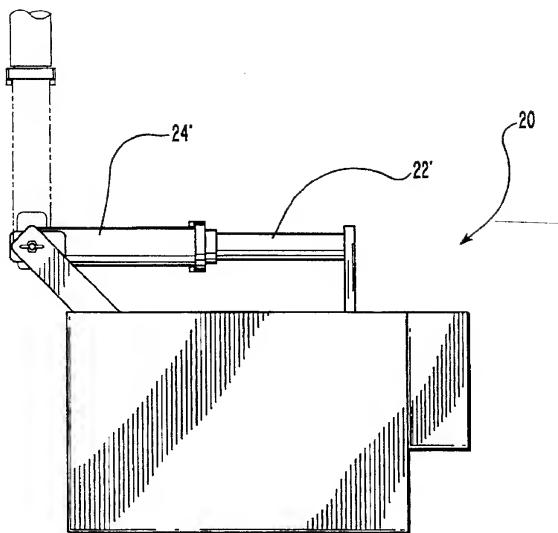


FIG. 3

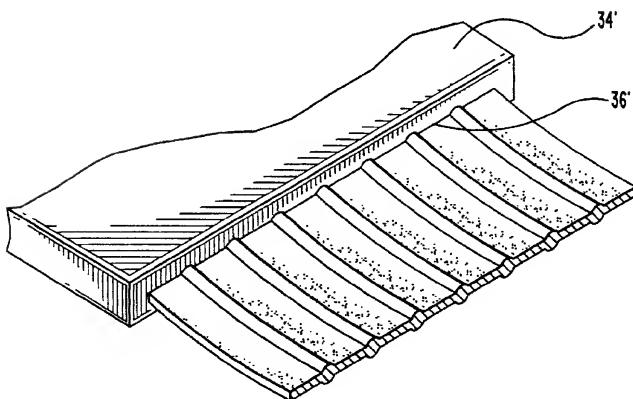


FIG. 4

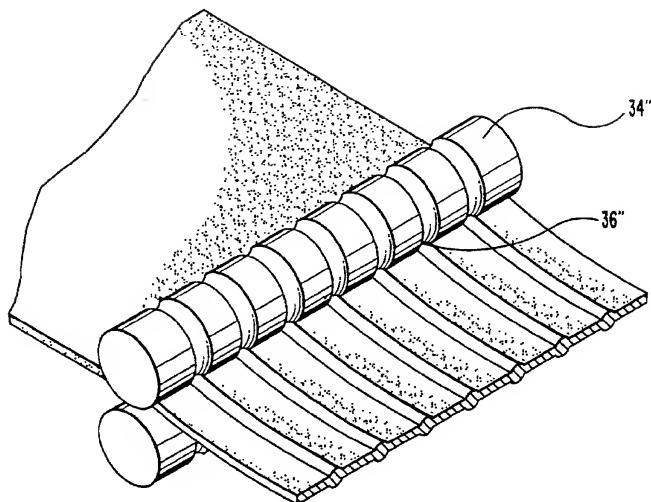


FIG. 5

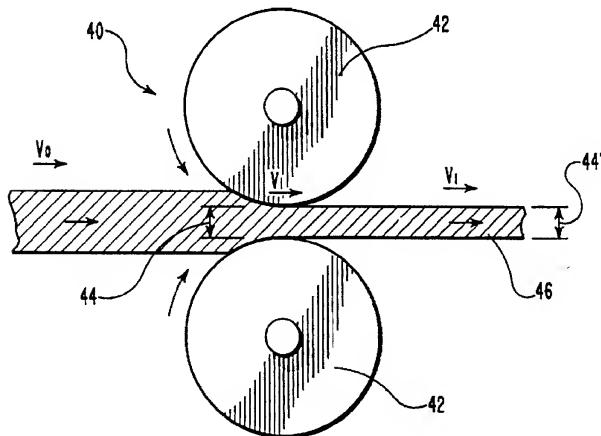


FIG. 6

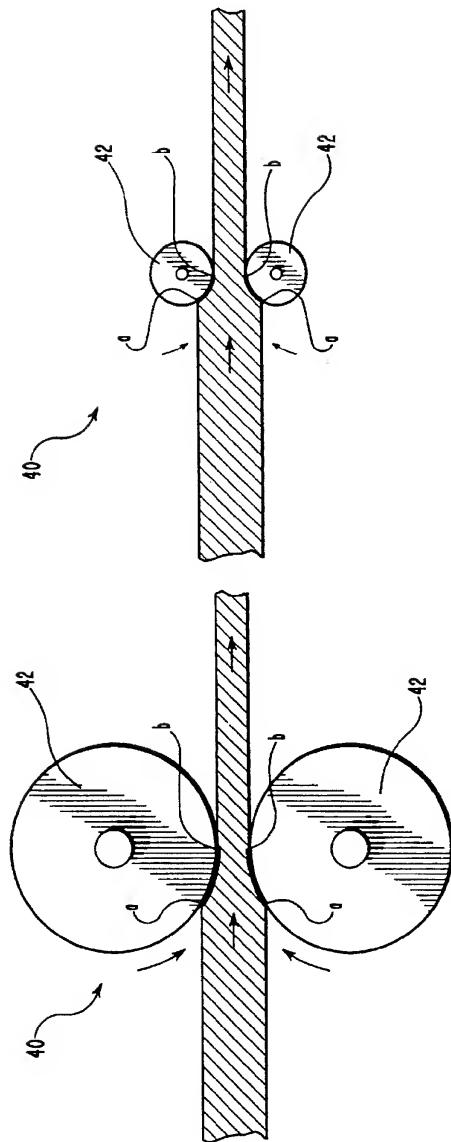


FIG. 7

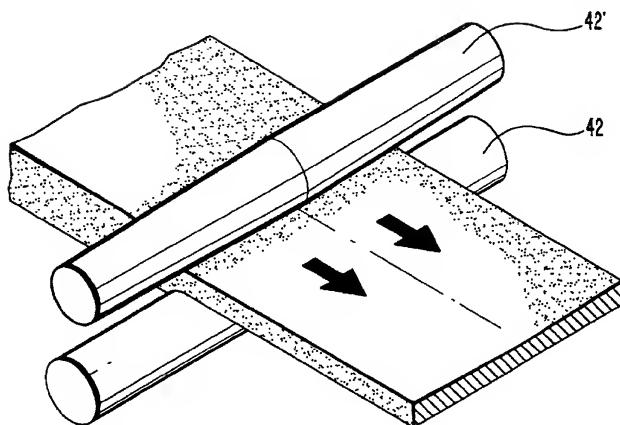


FIG. 8

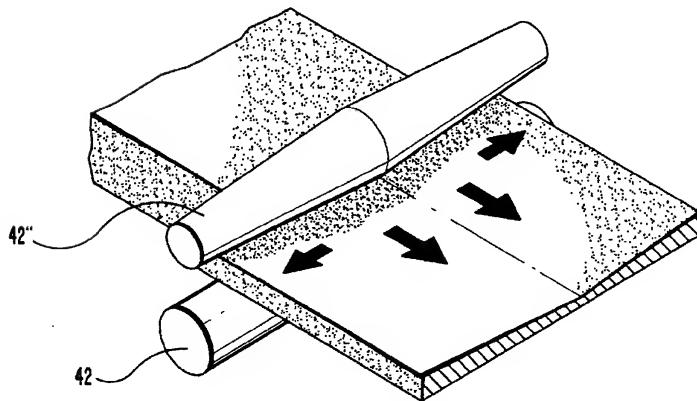


FIG. 9

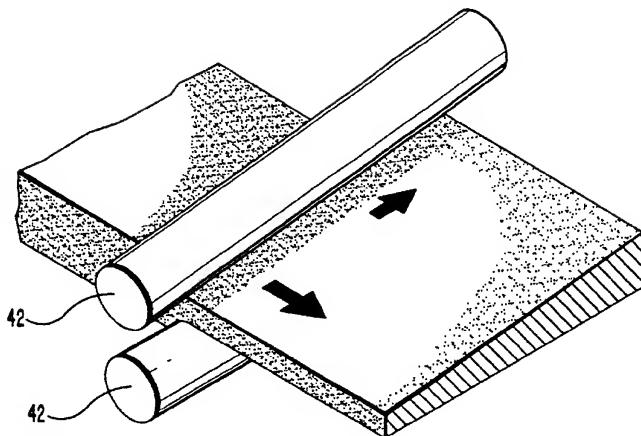


FIG. 10

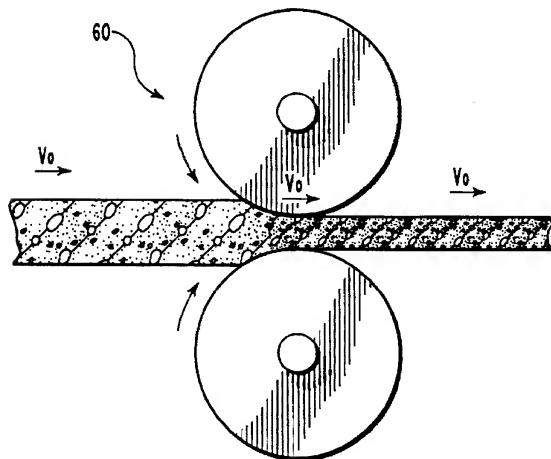
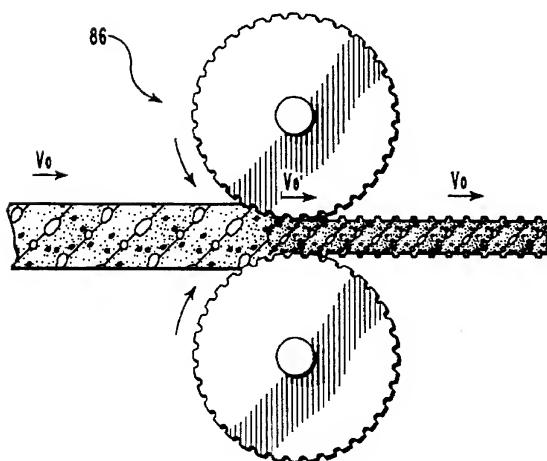
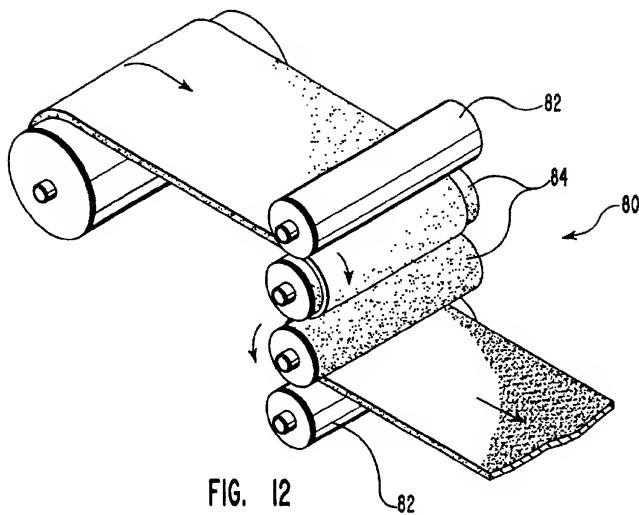


FIG. 11



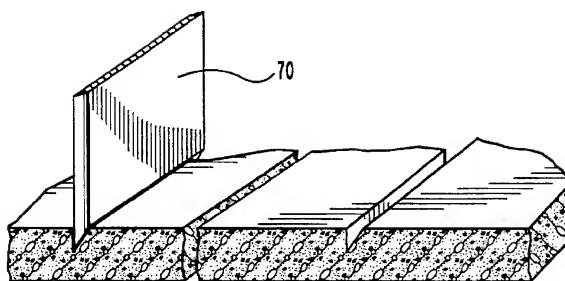


FIG. 14

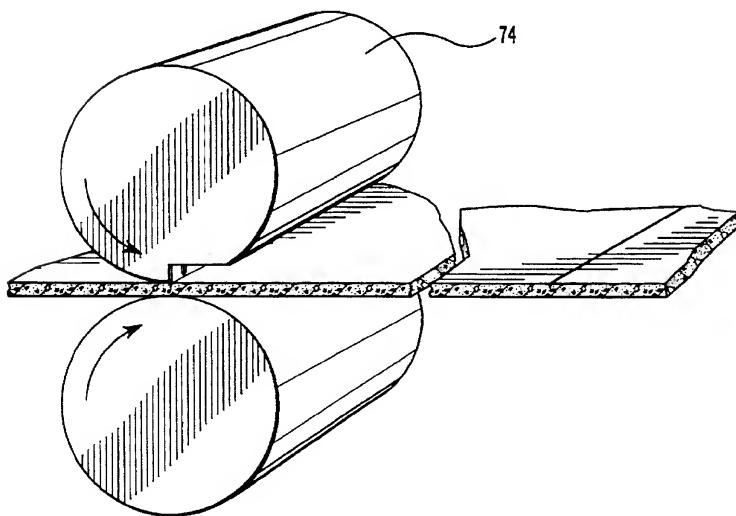


FIG. 15

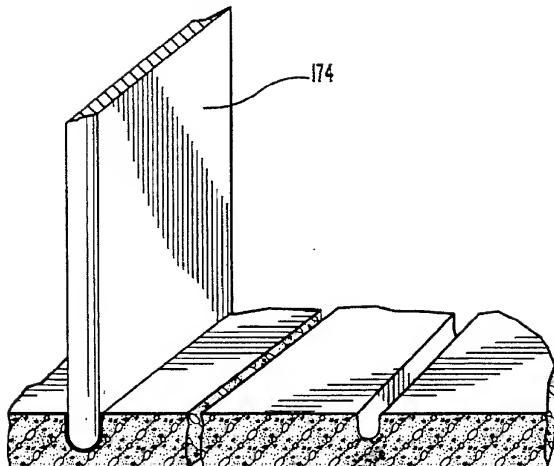


FIG. 16

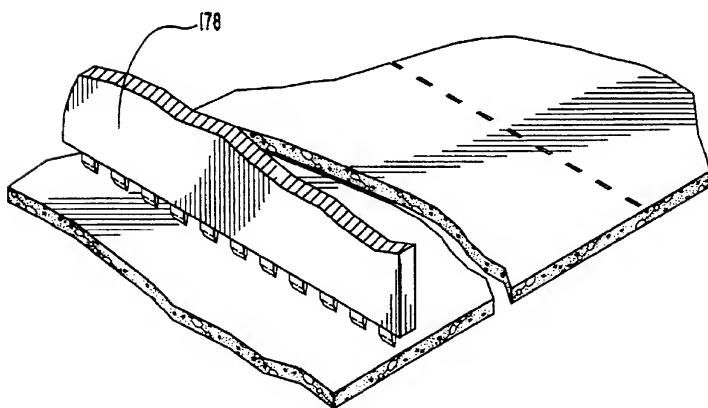


FIG. 17

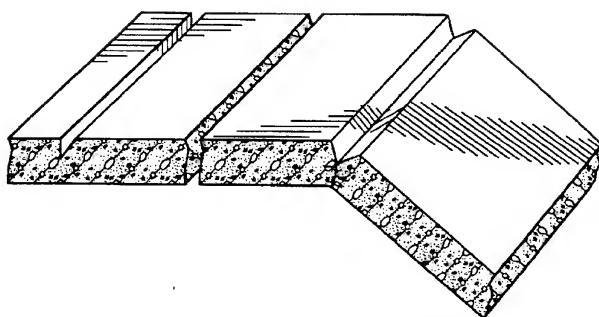


FIG. 18

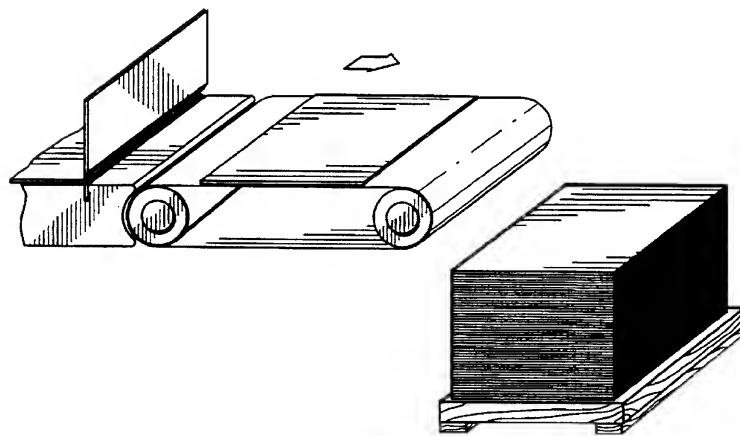


FIG. 19

**SHEETS HAVING A HIGHLY
INORGANICALLY FILLED ORGANIC
POLYMER MATRIX**

This application is a continuation of application Ser. No. 08/152,354, filed Nov. 19, 1993 now U.S. Pat. No. 5,508,072, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Ser. No. 08/101,500, filed on Aug. 3, 1993, and a continuation-in-part of U.S. Ser. No. 08/095,662, filed on Jul. 21, 1993, now U.S. Pat. No. 5,385,764, and a continuation-in-part of U.S. Ser. No. 07/982,383, filed on Nov. 25, 1992, now abandoned, and a continuation-in-part of U.S. Ser. No. 07/929,898, filed on Aug. 11, 1992, now abandoned. Said U.S. Ser. No. 08/101,500, U.S. Ser. No. 08/095,662, and U.S. Ser. No. 07/982,383 are also a continuation-in-part of U.S. Ser. No. 07/982,383, now abandoned.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1. The Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to compositions, methods for manufacturing sheets, and articles of manufacture having a highly inorganically filled organic polymer matrix. Sheets and articles of manufacture having such a matrix can vary greatly in thickness, stiffness, flexibility, toughness, and strength and can be used in a dry or moist state to form a variety of objects, including printed sheets, containers and other packaging materials. Such sheets are less expensive and are more environmentally friendly than sheets made from conventional materials (such as paper, plastic, or metal) and are especially useful in the manufacture of disposable food and beverage containers used by the fast food industry.

2. Related Applications

This application is a continuation of co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 18/152,354 entitled "Sheets Having a High Inorganically Filled Organic Polymer Matrix," filed Nov. 19, 1993, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson, issued as U.S. Pat. No. 5,508,072 which is a continuation-in-part of co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/095,662 entitled "Hydraulically Settable Containers and Other Articles for Storing, Dispensing, and Packaging Food and Beverages and Methods for Their Manufacture," filed Jul. 21, 1993, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson, now issued as U.S. Pat. No. 5,385,764.

This application is also a continuation-in-part of copending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/982,383 entitled "Food and Beverage Containers Made from Inorganic Aggregates and Polysaccharide, Protein, or Synthetic Organic Binders, and the Methods of Manufacturing Such Containers" filed Nov. 25, 1992, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson (now abandoned).

This application is also a continuation-in-part of co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/101,500 entitled "Methods And Apparatus For Manufacturing Moldable, Hydraulically Settable Sheets Used In Making Containers, Printed Materials, And Other Objects," and filed Aug. 3, 1993, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson, pending.

Each of these applications is a continuation-in-part of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/929,898 entitled "Cementitious Food And Beverage Storage, Dispensing, And Packaging Containers And The Methods Of Manufacturing Same," filed Aug. 11, 1992, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson (now abandoned). For purposes of disclosure of the present invention, each of

the applications identified in this section are incorporated herein by specific reference.

3. The Relevant Technology

A. Sheets, Containers, and Other Packaging Materials.

Thin, flexible sheets made from materials such as paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, and even metals are presently used in enormous quantity as printed materials, labels, mats, and in the manufacture of other objects such as containers, separators, dividers, envelopes, lids, tops, cans, and other packaging materials. Advanced processing and packaging techniques presently allow an enormous variety of liquid and solid goods to be stored, packaged, or shipped while being protected from harmful elements.

Containers and other packaging materials protect goods from environmental influences and distribution damage, particularly from chemical and physical influences. Packaging helps protect an enormous variety of goods from gases, moisture, light, microorganisms, vermin, physical shock, crushing forces, vibration, leaking, or spilling. Some packaging materials also provide a medium for the dissemination of information to the consumer, such as the origin of manufacture, contents, advertising, instructions, brand identification, and pricing.

Typically, most containers and cups (including disposable containers) are made from paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, glass and metal materials. Each year over 100 billion aluminum cans, billions of glass bottles and thousands of tons of paper and plastic are used in storing and dispensing soft drinks, juices, processed foods, grains, beer, etc. Outside of the food and beverage industry, packaging containers (and especially disposable containers) made from such materials are ubiquitous. Paper for printing, writing, and photocopying, magazines, newspapers, books, wrappers, and other flat items made from primarily from tree derived paper sheets are also manufactured each year in enormous quantities. In the United States alone, approximately 5½ million tons of paper are consumed each year for packaging purposes, which represents only about 15% of the total annual domestic paper production.

B. The Impact of Paper, Plastic, Glass and Metal

Recently there has been a debate as to which of these materials (e.g., paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, glass, or metal) is most damaging to the environment. Consciousness-raising organizations have convinced many people to substitute one material for another in order to be more environmentally "correct." The debate often misses the point that each of these materials has its own unique environmental weaknesses. One material may appear superior to another when viewed in light of a particular environmental problem, while ignoring different, often larger, problems associated with the supposedly preferred material. In fact, paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, glass, and metal materials each has its own unique environmental weaknesses.

Polystyrene products have more recently attracted the ire of environmental groups, particularly containers and other packaging materials. While polystyrene itself is a relatively inert substance, its manufacture involves the use of a variety of hazardous chemicals and starting materials. Unpolymerized styrene is very reactive and therefore presents a health problem to those who must handle it. Because styrene is manufactured from benzene (a known mutagen and probably a carcinogen), residual quantities of benzene can be found in styrene.

More potentially damaging has been the use of chlorofluorocarbons (or "CFCs") in the manufacture of "blown" or

"expanded" polystyrene products. This is because CFCs have been linked to the destruction of the ozone layer. In the manufacture of foams, including blown polystyrene, CFCs (which are highly volatile liquids) have been used to "expand" or "blow" the polystyrene into a foamed material, which is then molded into the form of cups, plates, trays, boxes, "clamshell" containers, spacers, or packaging materials. Even the substitution of less "environmentally damaging" blowing agents (e.g., HCFC, CO₂, and pentanes) are still significantly harmful and their elimination would be beneficial.

As a result, there has been widespread pressure for companies to stop using polystyrene products in favor of more environmentally safe materials. Some environmental groups have favored a temporary return to the use of more "natural" products such as paper or other products made from wood pulp, which are believed to be biodegradable. Nevertheless, other environmental groups have taken the opposite view in order to minimize the cutting of trees and depletion of forests.

Although paper products are ostensibly biodegradable and have not been linked to the destruction of the ozone layer, recent studies have shown that the manufacture of paper probably more strongly impacts the environment than does the manufacture of polystyrene. In fact, the wood pulp and paper industry has been identified as one of the five top polluters in the United States. For instance, products made from paper require ten times as much steam, fourteen to twenty times the electricity, and twice as much cooling water compared to an equivalent polystyrene product. Various studies have shown that the effluent from paper manufacturing contains ten to one hundred times the amount of contaminants produced in the manufacture of polystyrene foam.

In addition, a by-product of paper manufacturing is that the environment is impacted by dioxin, a harmful toxin. Dioxin, or more accurately, 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo[*b,e*]-[1,4]dioxin, is a highly toxic contaminant, and is extremely dangerous even in very low quantities. Toxic effects of dioxin in animals and humans include anorexia, severe weight loss, hepatotoxicity, hematoporphyria, vascular lesions, chloracne, gastric ulcers, porphyriuria, porphyria, cutanea tarda, and premature death. Most experts in the field believe that dioxin is a carcinogen.

Another drawback of the manufacture of paper and paper board is the relatively large amount of energy that is required to produce paper. This includes the energy required to process wood pulp to the point that the fibers are sufficiently delignified and fray that they are essentially self-binding under the principles of web physics. In addition, a large amount of energy is required in order to remove the water within conventional paper slurries, which contain water in amounts of up to about 99.5% by volume. Because so much water must be removed from the slurry, it is necessary to literally suck water out of the slurry even before heated rollers can be used to dry the sheet. Moreover, much of the water that is sucked out of the sheets during the dewatering processes is usually discarded into the environment.

The manufacturing processes of forming metal sheets into containers (particularly cans made of aluminum and tin), blowing glass bottles, and shaping ceramic containers utilize high amounts of energy because of the necessity to melt and then separately work and shape the raw metal into an intermediate or final product. These high energy and processing requirements not only utilize valuable energy resources, but they also result in significant air, water and

heat pollution to the environment. While glass can be recycled, that portion that ends up in landfills is essentially non-degradable. Broken glass shards are very dangerous and can persist for years.

Some of these pollution problems are being addressed; however, the result is the use of more energy, as well as the significant addition to the capital requirements for the manufacturing facilities. Further, while significant efforts have been expended in recycling programs, only a portion of the raw material needs come from recycling—most of the raw material still comes from nonrenewable resources.

Even paper or paperboard, believed by many to be biodegradable, can persist for years, even decades, within landfills where they are shielded from air, light, and water—all of which are required for normal biodegradation activities.

There are reports of telephone books and newspapers having been lifted from garbage dumps that had been buried for decades. This longevity of paper is further complicated since it is common to treat, coat, or impregnate paper with various protective materials which further slow or prevent degradation.

Another problem with paper, paperboard, polystyrene, and plastic is that each of these requires relatively expensive organic starting materials, some of which are nonrenewable, such as the use of petroleum in the manufacture of polystyrene and plastic. Although trees used in making paper and paperboard are renewable in the strict sense of the word, their large land requirements and rapid depletion in certain areas of the world undermines this notion. Hence, the use of huge amounts of essentially nonrenewable starting materials in making sheets and objects therefrom cannot be sustained and is not wise from a long term perspective. Furthermore, the processes used to make the packaging stock raw materials (such as paper pulp, styrene, or metal sheets) are very energy intensive, cause major amounts of water and air pollution, and require significant capital requirements.

In light of the foregoing, the debate should not be directed to which of these materials is more or less harmful to the environment, but rather toward asking: Can we discover or develop an alternative material which will solve most, if not all, of the various environmental problems associated with each of these presently used materials?

C. Inorganic Materials

Man has made great use of essentially nondepletable inorganic materials such as clay, natural minerals, or stone for millennia. Clay has found extensive use because of its ready moldability into a variety of articles including containers, tiles, and other useful objects. However, some of the drawbacks of clay include the time it takes for clay to harden, the need to fire or sinter clay in order for it to achieve its optimum strength properties, and its generally large, heavy, and bulky nature. Unfired clay, in particular, has low tensile strength and is very brittle. Nevertheless, clay has found some use in the manufacture of other materials as a plentiful, inexhaustible, and low-cost filler, such as in paper or paperboard. However, because of the brittle and noncohesive nature of clay when used as a filler, clay has generally not been included in amounts greater than about 20% by weight of the overall paper material.

Man has also made extensive use of stone in the manufacture of buildings, tools, containers, and other large, bulky objects. An obvious drawback of stone, however, is that it is very hard, brittle, and heavy, which limits its use to large, bulky objects of relatively high mass. Nevertheless, smaller or crushed stone can be used as an aggregate material in the manufacture of other products, such as hydraulically settable, or cementitious materials.

Hydraulically settable materials such as those that contain hydraulic cement or gypsum (hereinafter "hydraulically settable," "hydraulic," or "cementitious" compositions, materials, or mixtures) have been used for thousands of years to create useful, generally large, bulky structures that are durable, strong, and relatively inexpensive.

For example, cement is a hydraulically settable binder derived from clay and limestone, and it is essentially non-depletable and very inexpensive compared to the other materials discussed above. Hydraulic cement can be mixed with water and an aggregate material such as crushed stone or pebbles in order to create concrete. However, concrete has found commercial application only in the manufacture of large, bulky structural objects.

Although hydraulically settable materials have heretofore found commercial application only in the manufacture of large, bulky structural type objects, hydraulically settable mixtures have been created using a microstructural engineering approach which can be molded or shaped into relatively small, thin-walled objects. Indeed, such mixtures, which were developed by the inventors hereof, have been found to be highly moldable and can be extruded and/or rolled into thin-walled sheets, even as thin as 0.1 mm. Such mixtures and methods used to manufacture sheets therefrom are set forth more fully in co-pending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 08/101,500, entitled "Methods and Apparatus for Manufacturing Moldable Hydraulically Settable Sheets Used in Making Containers, Printed Materials, and other Objects," and filed Aug. 3, 1993, in the names of Per Just Andersen, Ph.D., and Simon K. Hodson, (hereinafter the "Andersen-Hodson Technology").

Although the hydraulically settable binder is believed to impart a significant amount of strength, including tensile and (especially) compressive strengths, such materials have been found in lower quantities to act less as a binding agent and more like an aggregate filler. As a result, studies have been conducted to determine whether sheets which do not necessarily use a hydraulically settable binder (or which only use such a binder in low enough quantities so that it will act mainly as an aggregate material) but which incorporate high concentrations of inorganic material can be manufactured. Such sheets would likewise have the advantages of hydraulically settable sheets over prior art paper, plastic, and metal materials in terms of their low cost, low environmental impact, and the ready availability of abundant starting materials.

Due to the more recent awareness of the tremendous environmental impacts of using paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, and metal's for a variety of single-use, mainly disposable, items such as printed sheets or containers made therefrom (not to mention the ever mounting political pressures), there has been an acute need (long since recognized by those skilled in the art) to find environmentally sound substitute materials. In particular, industry has sought to develop highly inorganically filled materials for these high waste volume items.

In spite of such economic and environmental pressures, extensive research, and the associated long-felt need, the technology simply has not existed for the economic and feasible production of highly inorganically filled, organic polymer bound materials which could be substituted for paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal sheets, or container products made therefrom. Some attempts have been made to fill paper with inorganic materials, such as kaolin and/or calcium carbonate, although there is a limit (about 20-35% by volume) to the amount of inorganics that

can be incorporated into these products. In addition, there have been attempts to fill certain plastic packaging materials with clay in order to increase the breathability of the product and improve the ability of the packaging material to keep fruits or vegetables stored therein fresh. In addition, inorganic materials are routinely added to adhesives and coatings in order to impart certain properties of color or texture to the cured product.

Nevertheless, inorganic materials only comprise a fraction of the overall material used to make such products, rather than making up the majority of the packaging mass. Because highly inorganically filled materials essentially comprise such environmentally neutral components as rock, sand, clay, and water, they would be ideally suited from an ecological standpoint to replace paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal materials as the material of choice for such applications. Inorganic materials also enjoy a large advantage over synthetic or highly processed materials from the standpoint of cost.

Such materials not only use significant amounts of non-depletable components, they do not impact the environment nearly as much as do paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal. Another advantage of highly inorganically filled materials is that they are far less expensive than paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metals. As set forth above, highly inorganically filled material require far less energy to manufacture.

Based on the foregoing, what is needed are improved compositions and methods for manufacturing highly inorganically filled organic polymer mixtures that can be formed into sheets and other objects presently formed from paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, glass, or metal.

It would be a significant improvement in the art if such compositions and methods yielded highly inorganically filled sheets which had properties similar to paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, or metal sheets. It would also be a tremendous improvement in the art if such sheets could be formed into a variety of containers or other objects using existing manufacturing equipment and techniques presently used to form such objects from paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, or metal sheets.

It would yet be an advancement in sheet making if the sheets could be formed from moldable mixtures which contain only a fraction of the water of typical slurries used to make paper and which did not require extensive dewatering during the sheet forming process. In addition, it would be a significant improvement in the art if such sheets, as well as containers or other objects made therefrom, were readily degradable into substances which are commonly found in the earth.

From a practical point of view, it would be a significant improvement if such materials and methods made possible the manufacture of sheets, containers, and other objects therefrom at a cost that is comparable or even superior to existing methods of manufacturing paper, plastic, or metal products. Specifically, it would be desirable to reduce the energy requirements and initial capital investment costs for making products having the desirable characteristics of paper, plastic, or metals.

From a manufacturing perspective, it would be a significant advancement in the art of shaping highly inorganically filled materials to provide compositions and methods for mass producing highly inorganically filled sheets which can rapidly be formed and substantially dried within a matter of minutes from the beginning of the manufacturing process.

It would also be a tremendous advancement in the art to provide compositions and methods which allow for the

production of highly inorganically filled materials having greater flexibility, tensile strength, toughness, moldability, and mass-producibility compared to materials having a high content of inorganic filler.

Such compositions and methods are disclosed and claimed herein.

BRIEF SUMMARY AND OBJECTS OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to novel compositions and methods for the manufacture of highly inorganically filled compositions, which can generally be described as multi-component, multi-scale, fiber-reinforced, micro-composites. By carefully incorporating a variety of different materials (including inorganic aggregates, organic polymers, and fibers) capable of imparting discrete yet synergistically related properties, it is possible to create a unique class or range of micro-composites having remarkable properties of strength, toughness, environmental soundness, mass-producibility, and low cost.

In particular, such materials can be used to manufacture sheets having properties similar to those of paper, plastic, or thin-walled metals, which can be used immediately to form a variety of objects such as containers or other packaging materials. Alternatively, such sheets can be rolled on to large spools or cut into sheets and stacked on a pallet much like paper or paperboard and stored until needed. Thereafter, the stacked or into the object ay be cut and formed into the object of choice. The sheets can be remoistened in order to introduce additional flexibility and elongation into the sheet to avoid splitting or cracking while being formed into the desired object.

The sheets contain from as low as about 40% to as high as about 98% inorganics (by volume of the total solids content) dispersed within an organic polymer binder matrix, thereby forming a highly inorganically filled/organic polymer matrix. Through microstructural engineering it is possible to manipulate the identities and relative proportions of these materials, as well as other admixtures within the matrix, in order to design a product having the desired properties of flexibility, high tensile strength, toughness and, mass-producibility.

The highly inorganically filled sheets can be printed, coated, laminated, layered, crimped, creped, stretched, stamped, convoluted, spiral wound, pressed, folded, fluted, corrugated, and glued much like paper or paperboard. In some cases, it may be advantageous during the manufacturing process to score or perforate the sheet to aid in forming a bend or hinge at a predetermined location within the sheet. The score can be pressed into the surface of the sheet any time after it has been formed; that is, the score can be pressed into the sheet while in the green state, in a semi-hardened state, or after it has become fully dry. The time and location of the placement of a score, score cut, or perforation will depend upon the desired purpose of the score and the properties of the particular sheet in question.

The result is the ability to mass produce a wide variety of different products heretofore manufactured from paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal at a cost that is usually competitive with, and in most cases even superior to, the costs involved in using these other materials. The cost savings come not only from the reduced cost of the raw materials, but also from the manufacturing processes which requires less energy and lower initial capital investment. In particular, the inorganically filled materials of the present invention require far less dewatering than the manufacture

of paper, as well as far lower costs in providing the necessary raw materials used to make plastics and metals.

Moreover, because the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention comprise more environmentally friendly components, the manufacture of such sheets impacts the environment to a much lesser extent than does the manufacture of sheets from these other materials. Such sheets preferably do not require the use of high concentrations of wood pulp, petroleum products, or other natural resources as does the manufacture of containers or other objects from paper, plastic, or metals.

The major components within the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention include mainly inorganic materials, such as sand, glass, silica, perlite, vermiculite, clay, mica, hydraulically settable binders, and even waste concrete products, together with a water-dispersible organic polymer binder, water, fibers, and possibly other admixtures.

Although the highly inorganically filled sheets may also include organic components, such as cellulose-based fibers and an organic binder, such components represent a much smaller fraction of the overall mass of the sheets compared to paper, and together will make up usually less than about 60% by volume of the total solids of the hardened inorganically filled sheet; preferably, this fraction will be less than about 40% by volume of the solids, and more preferably less than about 30%. In most cases, it will be preferable for the fiber to be included in amount of from about 0.5% to about 50% by volume of the total solids of the hardened sheet, more preferable from about 5% to about 35%, and most preferably from about 15% to about 30%. The organic polymer binder will preferably be included in an amount in the range from about 1% to about 50% by volume of the total solids of the hardened sheet, more preferably from about 2% to about 30%, and most preferably from about 5% to about 20%.

Due to the large number of possible moldable mixtures used in the manufacturing processes of the present invention, a wide range of fibers, both organic and inorganic, can be used. Any abundant fiber, not just wood fiber, but preferably that which can be planted and harvested in an agribusiness setting, will work well within the invention. The use of such fibrous materials would have the additional beneficial effect of preserving our dwindling forests.

In any event, fibers such as cotton, southern pine, flax, abaca, hemp, and bagasse are preferred for their environmental nature. However, other fibers may be preferred depending on the intended use and performance criteria of the sheet. Because they are dispersed within the inorganically filled/organic polymer matrix, they do not require the intense processing used to make most paper or paperboard products. Such intense processing is necessary in the paper industry in order to release the lignin and cellulose within the wood pulp and fray the fibers, thereby achieving an intertwining web effect between the fibers, which become essentially self-binding.

In the manufacture of paper, either a Kraft or a sulfite process is typically used to form the pulp sheet. In the Kraft process, the pulp fibers are "cooked" in a NaOH process to break up the fibers. In a sulfite process, acid is used in the fiber disintegration process.

In both of these processes, the fibers are first processed in order to release lignins locked within the fiber walls. However, when the lignins are removed from the fiber, much of the strength of the fiber is lost. Because the sulfite process is even more severe, the strength of the paper made by a

sulfite process will generally have only about 70% of the strength of paper made by the Kraft process. (Hence, to the extent wood fibers are included in the present invention, those processed using a Kraft process would be preferred because more strength remains in the fiber.)

In the manufacture of paper, once the wood has been made into wood pulp by either a Kraft or a sulfite process, it is further processed in a beater in order to further release lignins and hemicellulose within the fibers and also to fray the fibers. The resultant slurry, which generally contains about 99.5% water and only about 0.5% wood pulp, is subjected to heavy beating in order to release enough hemicellulose and fray the fibers sufficiently to form a fibrous mixture that is essentially self-binding through an intertwining web effect between the fibers.

The fibers are essentially self-binding through a web effect of the frayed fiber ends and the adhesive ability of the released lignins and hemicellulose, as well as the hydrogen bonding between the fibers. Hence, "web physics" and hydrogen bonding governs the forces maintaining the integrity of the resultant paper or paperboard product. However, the cost of such harsh treatment is that the fibers develop major flaws along the entire length of the fiber, thereby resulting in a loss of much of their tensile, tear, and burst strengths.

Because the manufacture of paper necessarily relies on web physics to obtain the necessary binding and structural integrity required for the paper sheet, a relatively high percentage of fibers (usually at least 80% or more) must be added to the paper sheet.

In sharp contrast, the present invention does not rely on web physics to bind the components of the inorganically filled together. Rather, the binding forces imparted by the water-dispersible organic polymer binder provide the majority of the tensile and flexural strengths within the sheet. To a lesser extent the organic polymer binder may also interact with certain inorganic aggregate particles as well as the fibers.

The result is the ability to include far less fiber within the inorganically filled matrix while maintaining the beneficial effects of tensile strength, tear and burst strength, and flexibility imparted by the fibers. Employing less fiber while maintaining good strength properties allows a more economically produced sheet or container (as compared to paper) because (1) fiber is typically far more expensive than the inorganic filler or aggregate, (2) the capital investment for the processing equipment is much less, (3) minimizing the fiber content also reduces the amount of organic compounds disposed of into the environment.

Another disadvantage of relying on web physics to provide the structural backbone of paper is that it creates a limit as to how much inorganic filler may be added to the finished sheet and still maintain adequate interlocking of the fibers. At some point, adding more than about 20-30% inorganic filler results in the "dilution" or separation of the fibers to the point that they are unable to adequately interlock, thereby greatly diminishing the tensile strength and toughness of the more highly filled paper sheet.

Moreover, because the fibers need not be frayed and delignified in the present invention, it is unnecessary to subject the fiber to the intense processing required in the manufacture of paper slurries. This preserves the strength of the fibers to a greater extent and allows them to be included in even lesser amounts while still deriving a high level of strength and flexibility therefrom. Rather than being highly frayed and fractured as are fibers used to make paper, the

fibers used in the present invention remain substantially unfrayed and (in the case of cellulosic fibers) undelignified.

Another difference between the inorganically filled mixtures used to make the sheets of the present invention and slurries used to make paper is that the mixtures of the present invention do not significantly decrease in volume or length (i.e., compaction or shrinkage) from the beginning to the end of the manufacturing process. This is a radical departure from paper slurries, which are greatly reduced in volume due to the extensive dewatering that occurs. Although much of the water within the moldable mixtures of the present invention is removed by evaporation, the nature of the mixture is such that the spaces once occupied by water remain, either as empty voids or partially filled by the organic polymer binder.

Unlike the manufacture of plastic or polystyrene, highly inorganically filled sheets utilize little or no petroleum-based products or derivatives as starting materials. Thus, although some amount of fossil fuel is necessary to generate the energy used in manufacturing the highly inorganically filled sheets, only a fraction of the petroleum used in the manufacture of polystyrene or plastic products will be consumed overall. In addition, the energy requirements of the present invention are much less than the energy requirements of paper manufacturing where extensive dewatering is necessary.

As compared to the manufacture of thin-walled metal products (such as aluminum and tin cans), the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention do not result in the continued use of rapidly depleting natural resources. Further, the lower temperature and simplicity of processing conditions of the present invention reduce the costs of energy and the initial capital investment.

Finally, another advantage of the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention (as well as containers, printed materials, or other objects made therefrom) is that their disposal impacts the environment for less than paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, glass, or metal products. The highly inorganically filled materials of the present invention are both readily recyclable and, even if not recycled, will readily degrade when exposed to moisture, pressure, and other environmental forces into a fine granular powder which has a composition that is complementary to the components of the earth.

If the highly inorganically filled sheets (or products made therefrom) are discarded into a landfill, they will break down into a fine, mainly inorganic, powder under the weight of the other garbage present. If discarded onto the ground, the forces of water and wind, and even fortuitous compressive forces such as from cars running over them or people stepping on them, will cause the inorganically filled waste materials to be reduced to a largely inorganic, harmless granular powder in a short period of time relative to the time it usually takes for the typical disposable paper or polystyrene sheet or container to decompose under the same circumstances. Whatever organic substances remain after the degradation of the sheet are minimal and will preferably be biodegradable.

A polystyrene, plastic, or metal cup or can thrown into a lake or stream will last for decades, perhaps even centuries, while a container made from a highly inorganically filled sheet will decompose in a short period of time into essentially a dirt-like powder—the time of dissolution being dependent largely on the mix design of the starting mixture.

In general, the particular qualities of any embodiment of the present invention can be designed beforehand using a

materials science and microstructural engineering approach in order to give the microstructure of the inorganically filled/organic polymer matrix the desired properties, while at the same time remaining cognizant of the costs and other complications involved in large scale manufacturing systems. This materials science and microstructural engineering approach, instead of the traditional trial-and-error, mix-and-test approach, allows for the design of highly inorganically filled materials with the desired properties of high tensile and flexural strength, low weight, low cost, and low environmental impact.

The preferred structural matrix of the sheets, containers, and other objects manufactured according to the present invention is formed from the interaction between inorganic aggregate particles, a water dispersible organic binder, and fibers. These are made into a highly moldable, workable, and uniform mixture by adding an appropriate amount of water and thoroughly mixing the components together. The amount of added water is preferably just enough to provide adequate workability and moldability, while maintaining a mixture that is form stable; that is, a mixture which will maintain its shape during hardening after being manufactured into the desired shape. In this case this is preferably a continuous sheet which will usually be calendared or otherwise finished using rollers and other manufacturing equipment utilized in the paper industry.

In addition, other admixtures such as hydraulically set-table materials, dispersants, air-entraining agents, or blowing agents (often introduced during the extrusion process), can be added in order to obtain a sheet having the desired properties. The identity and quantity of any additive will depend on the desired properties or performance criteria of both the moldable mixture, as well as the final hardened sheet or article manufactured therefrom.

Dispersants act to decrease the viscosity of the mixture by dispersing the individual inorganic aggregate particles or fibers. This allows for the use of less water while maintaining adequate levels of workability. Suitable dispersants include any material which can be adsorbed onto the surface of the inorganic aggregate particles and which act to disperse the particles, usually by creating a charged area on the particle surface or in the near colloid double layer. The like charges then tend to repel each other, thus preventing the particles from agglomerating. In some cases, it may be advantageous to add the dispersant to a mixture containing water, aggregates, and fibers before the organic binder is added to derive the maximum dispersion effect.

The aggregate materials within the structural matrix of the sheets mainly add bulk and greatly decrease the cost of the mixture. In addition, they provide for a more moldable mixture compared to typical slurries used to make paper. Examples of inexpensive aggregates are ordinary sand, clay, and calcium carbonate (limestone), which are environmentally safe, inexpensive, and essentially inexhaustible. Different inorganic aggregates will impart their own unique surface characteristics to the sheet and may be chosen accordingly. For example, kaolin gives a smoother, less porous finish, while plate-like materials such as mica and other clays yield a shiny surface.

In other cases, lightweight aggregates can be added to yield a lighter, and often more insulating, final product. Examples of lightweight aggregate are perlite, vermiculite, hollow glass spheres, aerogel, xerogel, fumed silica, and other lightweight, rock-like materials. These aggregates are likewise environmentally neutral and relatively inexpensive.

Gels or microgels such as silica gels, calcium silicate gels, aluminum silicate gels, and the like can be added to the

inorganically filled matrix either as an ordinary aggregate or as a moisture regulation agent within the inorganically filled mixture and the final hardened sheet.

Finally, hydraulically settable binders such as hydraulic cement, gypsum hemihydrate, and calcium oxide can be added to the moldable mixture in order to affect the rheology and workability, and to create a mixture with earlier green strength. Such binders have an internal drying effect because they can chemically react with and bind significant amounts of water within the mixture depending on their concentration. In addition, some hydraulic cements such as portland gray cement, increase the cohesiveness of the moldable mixture.

Compared to paper, far more inorganic aggregate filler is incorporated into the sheets of the present invention. The highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention will include inorganic aggregates in an amount of from about 40% to about 98% by volume of the total solids content of the sheet, more preferably from about 50% to about 95%, and most preferably from about 60% to about 80%.

The fibers which are dispersed within the inorganic/organic binder matrix yield a sheet with properties similar to those of tree or vegetable paper, such as tensile, flexural, and cohesive strengths, even though only about $1/30$ to $1/5$ as much fiber is used in the present invention. This is due in part to the fact that the fibers used in the present invention undergo far less processing than fibers used to make paper. It is also due to the unique interactions between the inorganic particles and organic binders used in the present invention. Hence, sheets having an inorganic filler content in the range from about 40% to about 98% by volume of the total solids, but which have high toughness and flexibility, can be manufactured according to the present invention.

A preferred method of manufacturing the highly inorganically filled sheets within the scope of the present invention includes the steps of (1) preparing a moldable mixture by mixing together water, inorganic aggregates, a water-dispersible organic binder, and fibers; (2) placing the moldable mixture into an extruder, such as an auger or piston extruder; (3) extruding the mixture through an appropriate die to preferably form a flat sheet of a desired thickness, or a pipe that can be unfolded into a sheet; (4) reducing the thickness of the sheet by passing it between at least one pair of rollers; and (5) drying the sheet to create a substantially hardened matrix comprising aggregate particles and fibers held together by an organic polymer binder.

A second method suitable for most mix designs includes (1) mixing the inorganically filled material in a kneader and then removing the air under a vacuum; (2) extruding and then cutting the mixture into individual units of an appropriate shape (such as a cylinder); (3) conveying the extruded units into a hopper; (4) passing the extruded units between a pair of self-feeding extruding rollers to form a sheet; and (5) optionally drying or otherwise finishing the sheet.

The extrusion step aids in deairing the moldable mixture and the individual extruded units provide a more uniform supply of the moldable mixture at the entrance of the extruding rollers. Nevertheless, in a third embodiment the moldable mixture is simply conveyed directly to the extrusion rollers after the mixing step without an intervening deairing step. A simple auger extruder might function as the conveying means.

In addition to the simple sheet forming process, the sheet can be optionally compacted while still in a moldable condition in order to eliminate unwanted voids created when

water is removed from the structural matrix by evaporation, increase the fiber adhesion, reduce porosity, and/or increase surface smoothness. This is carried out by passing the sheet through one or more separate sets of compaction rollers. As the interstitial water is removed, porosity and voids are created in the sheet. The sheet can then be compacted to remove these voids if desired. This compaction occurs by further molding of the matrix to remove the voids.

However, the sheet must retain enough water before or during the compaction process in order for the inorganically filled matrix to remain moldable. Drying the sheet to the point of nonmoldability before or during the compaction step could result in the creation of defects within the inorganically filled matrix. One skilled in the art will be able to optimize the level of drying before or during the compaction step for any given sheet manufacturing process.

By controlling the water content and roller nip, it will be possible to ensure that the compaction rollers primarily compress and increase the density of the sheet without significantly elongating the sheet. The compaction step improves the strength of the final hardened sheet by creating a more dense and uniform structural matrix while also leaving the sheet with a smoother finish. The optional compaction step is generally preferred in the case of thinner sheets where strength per unit of thickness should be maximized and where insulation ability is less important. Compaction is generally unnecessary for thicker sheets intended to have high insulation and/or low density characteristics. Indeed, it may be undesirable to compact sheets having aggregates such as hollow glass spheres, which may lose their insulating ability if crushed.

It may be desirable to pass the sheets between one or more pairs of finishing rollers consisting of a hard and soft roller, the hard roller leaving a glossy finish on one side while the soft roller provides friction so that the sheet can be pulled with some tension. The finishing rollers can also impart a textured or roughened finish to the sheets. This finishing process generally does not involve a compaction of the sheet.

The sheet can also be optionally scored, score cut, or perforated while in a slightly moistened or even in the dry condition in order to create a line within the structural matrix upon which the sheet can later be bent. Optionally, the sheet could be passed through a set of corrugation rollers in order to produce a corrugated sheet and/or cardboard.

In addition, coatings can be applied to the surface of the sheet for a number of reasons, such as to make the sheet more waterproof, more flexible, or to give it a glossier surface. Coatings based upon materials such as soybean oil or Methocel® (available from Dow Chemical), either alone or in combination with polyethylene glycol, can be applied to the surface in order to permanently soften the sheet or a hinge area within the sheet.

Elastomer, plastic, or paper coatings can aid in preserving the integrity of the hinge whether or not the underlying hardened structural matrix fractures upon bending at the hinge. In the case of packaging containers, it may be desirable to print the sheets or otherwise attach indicia or logos on the surface, such as by embossing or engraving the surface. The printed sheets may also be used in magazines, brochures, or other reading materials.

After the highly inorganically filled sheet has been dried and has been optionally treated using any of the other procedures set forth above, it can either be used immediately much like a sheet of paper or paperboard, or it can be stored for later use by, for example, rolling the sheet onto a spool or by cutting and stacking the sheets onto a pallet.

During the subsequent process of forming the sheet into the shape of the desired object, it will sometimes be preferable (depending on the stiffness of the sheet) to remoisten the hardened sheet in order to temporarily increase the flexibility and bendability of the sheet. This is particularly true in the case where the sheet will be rolled or has been scored and is expected to make a particularly sharp bend during a container forming stage. After the sheets are rolled and/or bent into the desired configuration, it may be necessary to glue the ends or seams together using adhesive methods known to those skilled in the art. It may also be necessary in some cases to trim excess material from the final product using cutting means known in the paper or plastic arts.

It will be understood that it is the combination of the organic polymer binder into which the inorganic aggregates are dispersed which gives the sheets and other objects made therefrom their basic structural component, or inorganically filled matrix. The organic polymer binder is the component which holds the matrix together, although the other components, such as the inorganic aggregate, may also interact with themselves and/or the organic polymer binder to add compressive and tensile strength, flexibility, toughness, insulating ability, and other desired properties to the material.

It will be understood that fibers are a preferred additive which increases the tensile strength, flexibility, ductility, and bendability of the highly inorganically filled sheets. Having a relatively high concentration of fibers is particularly important where the sheet has been scored and is expected to bend over a larger angle. In addition, the properties imparted to the hardened sheets by the fibers can be increased by unidirectionally or bidirectionally orienting the fibers within the sheet. Depending on the shape of the extruder die head, the extrusion process itself will tend to orient the fibers in the "Y" (or longitudinal) direction. The sheet thickness reduction process, during which the sheet is also elongated, further orients the fibers in the "Y" direction.

In addition, by using a pair of rollers having different orientation in the "Z" direction (or normal to the surface of the sheet), such as by using a flat roller paired with a conical roller, a percentage of the fibers can be oriented in the "X" (or width-wise) direction. In this way a sheet having bidirectionally oriented fibers can be manufactured. This is thought to occur because the conical roller can widen the sheet in the "X" direction.

In embodiments where the moldable mixture is not formed into a sheet until passed between a pair of extruding rollers it is possible to affect the alignment of the fibers by adjusting the pressure with which the mixture is fed into the rollers. Where the mixture is fed between the extruding rollers under lower pressures, the sudden acceleration of the material through the rollers creates a significant amount of machine-direction shear, which will tend to orient the fibers within the sheet in the machine direction.

At the other extreme, wherein the moldable mixture is fed between the extruding rollers under higher pressures, the rollers will impart far less machine-direction shear, which will tend to allow the fibers to remain in a more randomized arrangement within the sheet. By adjusting the feeding pressure of the moldable mixture between the rollers it will be possible for one skilled in the art to optimize the alignment of the fibers in the machine direction to the degree desired. Certain conveyors, such as auger conveyors, allow for the adjustment of the pressure with which the moldable mixture is fed between the rollers.

It will be appreciated that where the differential between the roller nip and the sheet thickness before the sheet passes between the reduction rollers is small, the fiber orienting flow of material will tend to be localized at or near the sheet surface, with the interior not being subjected to fiber orienting flow. This allows for the production of sheets that have significant unidirectional or bidirectional orientation of fibers at near the surface of the sheet and more random orientation of fibers within the interior of the sheet. However, by decreasing the nip relative to the initial sheet thickness it is possible to increase the orientation of the fibers within the interior of the sheet by increasing the fiber orienting flow of material within the sheet interior.

From the foregoing, an object of the present invention is to provide improved compositions and methods for manufacturing highly inorganically filled mixtures that can be formed into sheets and other objects presently formed from paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, glass, or metal.

Another object and feature of the present invention is to provide compositions and methods which yield highly inorganically filled sheets which have properties similar to those of paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, or metal sheets. A further object of the present invention is to provide highly inorganically filled sheets which can be formed into a variety of containers and other objects using existing manufacturing equipment and techniques presently used to form such objects from paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal sheets.

Yet another object and feature of the present invention is the ability to manufacture sheets formed from moldable mixtures which contain only a fraction of the water of typical slurries used to make paper and which did not require intensive dewatering during the sheet forming process. Still a further object and feature is that such sheets, as well as containers or other objects made therefrom, are readily degradable into substances which are commonly found in the earth.

Another object of the present invention is to provide compositions and methods which make possible the manufacture of sheets, containers, and other objects therefrom at a cost that is comparable or even superior to existing methods of manufacturing paper or polystyrene products. Still another object and feature of the present invention is to provide methods for manufacturing sheets which are less energy intensive, which conserve valuable natural resources, and which require lower initial capital investments.

An additional object and feature of the present invention is to provide compositions and methods for mass producing highly inorganically filled sheets which can rapidly be formed and substantially dried within a matter of minutes from the beginning of the manufacturing process.

Another feature and object is to provide compositions and methods which allow for the production of highly inorganically filled materials having greater flexibility, tensile strength, toughness, moldability, and mass-producibility compared to materials having a high content of inorganic filler.

These and other objects and features of the present invention will become more fully apparent from the following description and appended claims, or may be learned by the practice of the invention.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

In order that the manner in which the above-recited and other advantages and objects of the invention are obtained, a more particular description of the invention briefly char-

acterized above will be rendered by reference to specific embodiments thereof which are illustrated in the appended drawings. Understanding that these drawings depict only typical embodiments of the invention and are therefore not to be considered limiting of its scope, the invention will be described with additional specificity and detail through the use of the accompanying drawings in which:

FIG. 1A is a schematic view of a preferred system used to manufacture a highly inorganically filled sheet, including a mixer, extruder, reduction rollers, drying rollers, compaction rollers (optional), finishing rollers (optional), and spooler (optional).

FIG. 1B is a schematic view of a second preferred system used to manufacture a highly inorganically filled sheet, including a mixer, extruding rollers, drying rollers, compaction rollers, finishing rollers, and spooler.

FIG. 2 is a perspective view with cutaway of an auger extruder with evacuation chamber and die head.

FIG. 3 is a side view of a piston extruder with die head.

FIG. 4 is a perspective view of a die head with a slit having a varying gap along the length.

FIG. 5 is a perspective view of nonuniformly cylindrical rollers used to make a nonplanar sheet.

FIG. 6 is a side view of a pair of reduction rollers and a sheet being reduced in thickness by the rollers.

FIG. 7 is a side view comparing the effect (of narrow and broad rollers) on sheet reduction.

FIG. 8 is a perspective view of a slightly pitched conical roller used to reduce the shearing force applied to a sheet being reduced in thickness.

FIG. 9 is a perspective view of a substantially pitched conical roller used to widen the sheet passing therethrough in the "X" direction.

FIG. 10 is a perspective view of a set of rollers with altered "Z" orientation to form a varying gap along the "X" direction and widen the sheet.

FIG. 11 is a side view of a pair of compaction rollers with a sheet being compacted therebetween.

FIG. 12 is a perspective view of a pair of finishing rollers including a "hard" roller and a "soft" roller.

FIG. 13 is a side view of a pair of corrugated rollers used to form a corrugated sheet.

FIG. 14 is a perspective view of a sheet being score cut by a knife blade cutter.

FIG. 15 is a perspective view of a sheet being score cut by a continuous die cut roller.

FIG. 16 is a perspective view of a score being pressed into a sheet by a scoring die.

FIG. 17 is a perspective view of a sheet being perforated by a perforator cutter.

FIG. 18 is a perspective view showing how a sheet with a score cut more easily bends at the score cut.

FIG. 19 is a perspective view showing a continuous sheet being cut and stacked as individual sheets.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

The present invention relates to novel compositions and methods for the manufacture of highly inorganically filled compositions, which can generally be described as multi-component, multi-scale, fiber-reinforced, micro-composites. By carefully incorporating a variety of different materials (including inorganics and fibers) capable of imparting dis-

crete yet synergistically related properties, it is possible to create a unique class or range of micro-composites having remarkable properties of strength, toughness, environmental soundness, mass-productivity, and low cost.

The term "multi-component" refers to the fact that the inorganically filled materials used to make the sheets of the present invention typically include three or more chemically or physically distinct materials or phases, such as fibers, inorganic aggregate materials, organic aggregate materials, organic polymer binders, rheology-modifying materials, hydraulically settable materials, water, other liquids, entrapped gases, or voids. Each of these broad categories of materials imparts one or more unique properties to the final sheet made therefrom (as well as the mixture used to form the sheet). Within these broad categories it is possible to further include different components (such as two or more inorganic aggregates or fibers) which can impart different, yet complementary, properties to the sheet. This allows for the specific engineering of desired properties within the sheet in conjunction with the manufacturing process.

The term "multi-scale" refers to fact that the compositions and materials of the present invention are definable at different levels or scales. Specifically, within the inorganically filled materials of the present invention there is typically a macro-component composition in the range from about 10 nanometers to as high as about 10 mm, a micro-component composition in the range of about 1 micron to about 100 microns, and a submicron component. Although these levels may not be fractal, they are usually very similar to each other, and homogeneous and uniform within each level.

The term "fiber-reinforced" is self-explanatory, although the key term is "reinforced", which clearly distinguishes the highly inorganically filled materials of the present invention from conventional paper or paper products. Conventional paper relies on "web" physics, or intertwining of fibers, to provide the structural matrix and mass, as well as the binding, of the paper. However, the matrix of the inorganically filled materials of the present invention relies on the bond or interaction between the inorganic aggregate, the organic polymer binder, and the fibers. The fibers act primarily as a reinforcing component to specifically add tensile strength and flexibility.

Finally, the term "micro-composite" refers to the fact that the inorganically filled materials are not merely a compound or mixture but a designed matrix of specific, discrete materials on a micro-level, which are of different sizes, shapes, and chemical make-up. The materials are sufficiently well bound and interactive so that the unique properties of each are fully evidenced in the final composite (e.g., the tensile strength of the matrix has a direct correlation to the tensile strength of the fibrous component; the insulation of the matrix has a direct correlation to the total porosity and insulative character of the aggregate material, etc.).

In light of these definitions and principles, materials that include an organic polymer binder, fibers (both organic and inorganic), and an inorganic aggregate can be combined and molded into a variety of products, including sheets having properties similar to those of conventional paper or paper-board. The highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention can also substitute for sheets made from plastic, polystyrene, and even metal. The sheets can be cut and formed (such as by rolling or folding) into a variety of containers and other articles of manufacture. The compositions and methods (including sheets made therefrom) are particularly useful in the mass production of disposable containers and packaging, such as for the fast food industry.

I. General Discussion.

A. Conventional Paper Products.

"Paper" is the general term for a wide range of matted or felted webs of vegetable fiber (mostly wood) that have been formed on a screen from a water suspension. The sheet products which most people refer to as "paper" or "paper-board" are generally "tree paper" because they are manufactured from wood pulp derived from trees. Although tree paper may include inorganic fillers or extenders, starches, or other minor components, it will typically contain a relatively high wood fiber content, generally from about 80% to as high as 98% by volume of the paper sheet. Tree paper is manufactured, as set forth more fully above, by processing wood pulp to the point of releasing the lignins and hemicellulose constituents of the raw wood pulp fibers, as well as fraying and fracturing the fibers themselves, in order to obtain a mixture of fibers, lignins, and hemicellulose that will be essentially self-binding through web physics. The broad category of cellulose-based paper, mainly plant, vegetable, or tree paper, will hereinafter collectively be referred to as "conventional paper".

The properties of an individual conventional paper or paperboard are extremely dependent on the properties of the pulps used. Pulp properties are dependent on both the source and the processing technique(s) used to prepare the pulp for paper-making. For example, coarse packaging papers are almost always made of unbleached Kraft softwood pulps. Fine papers, generally made of bleached pulp, are typically used in applications demanding printing, writing, and special functional properties such as barriers to liquid and/or gaseous penetrants.

Conventional paper is typically manufactured by creating a highly aqueous slurry, or furnish, which is then substantially dewatered by first placing the slurry on a porous screen or wire sieve and then "squeegeing" out the water using a roller nip. This first dewatering process results in a sheet having a water content of about 50-60%. After that, the partially dried paper sheet is further dried by heating the sheet, often by means of heated rollers. Because of the paper manufacturing process, as well as the limitations imposed by web physics, there has been an upper limit of the amount of inorganic aggregate fillers than can be impregnated within a conventional paper sheet.

For example, U.S. Pat. No. 4,445,970 to Post et al., and entitled "High Mineral Composite Fine Paper," summarized the then-existing prior by stating that "fillers are normally added at a level of 4-20% by weight of the finished paper, although rarely as much as 30% filler has been used in Europe and 25% in the United States. Fine paper manufacture is believed to depend in part on hydrogen bonding and one problem which occurs in the use of more than 20% filler in fine paper manufacture is that too much filler reduces hydrogen bonding and causes the web to lose its strength." (Column 1, lines 42-50) Post et al. further states that to obtain more highly filled sheets it was necessary to apply starch or gum coatings in order to increase the strength and maintain the integrity of the final sheet.

Post et al. teaches how to obtain more highly filled paper that is still manufactured using conventional paper-making processes by using a suitable latex material to strengthen the sheet lattice. Even so, Post et al. only teaches how to obtain paper sheets having from 30-70% by weight inorganic filler, which actually corresponds to an inorganic content of only about 15-35% by volume. (This conversion from weight percent to volume percent was made by assuming that the inorganic fillers disclosed in Post et al., namely kaolin and talc, have a specific gravity when dry of about 2.6, while the

wood pulp fibers and organic sizing agents used therein have a specific gravity when dry of only about 1.2.) As evidenced by the examples, the preferred sheets in Post et al. had a filler content of only about 50% by weight (or about 25% by volume). This is in sharp contrast to the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention, which contain at least 40% by volume inorganic aggregates, and preferably much more, as set forth more fully below.

In order to obtain the well-known properties that are typical of paper, substitute fibrous substrates have been added instead of wood derived fibers. These include a variety of plant fibers (known as "secondary fibers"), such as straw, flax, abaca, hemp, and bagasse. The resultant paper is often referred to as "plant paper". As in tree paper, plant paper relies on web physics, highly processed fibers, and highly aqueous fiber slurries in its manufacture.

Besides the inclusion of much higher concentrations of inorganic aggregate fillers, the present invention differs from conventional paper manufacturing processes in a number of ways. First, far less water is used in the moldable mixtures (less than about 50% by volume) of the present invention compared to conventional paper slurries, which typically contain water in an amount of at least 97% by volume, and even as much as 99.9% water. More importantly, the sheets are formed from a highly cohesive, yet moldable mixture rather than an aqueous slurry such that once placed into a shape it will generally maintain its shape unless further acted upon. Moreover, the moldable mixtures will not shrink more than about 10%, and not at all in some cases. Paper slurries, on the other hand, will shrink by an amount of 60% or more during the paper-making process.

Despite the differences in their composition and manufacture, the highly inorganically filler sheets of the present invention can be made to have the strength, toughness, flexibility, folding endurance, bendability, and look and feel of ordinary paper. Of course, the microstructural engineering approach to designing the moldable mixtures used to make the inorganically filled sheets allows for the manufacture of sheets having an extremely wide variety of properties not found in paper.

B. Sheets, Containers, and Other Objects

The term "sheet" as used in this specification and the appended claims is intended to include any substantially flat, corrugated, curved, bent, or textured sheet made using the methods described herein. The only essential compositional limitation is that the structural matrix of at least part of the sheet comprises a highly inorganically filled composite having water-dispersible organic binder. The sheet may include other materials such as paper, organic coatings, ink, or other organic materials in addition to the highly inorganically filled/organic binder matrix portion.

The sheets within the scope of the present invention can have greatly varying thickness depending on the particular application for which the sheet is intended. They can be as thin as about 0.01 mm and as thick as 1 cm or greater where strength, durability, and/or bulk are important considerations.

The term "container" as used in this specification and the appended claims is intended to include any article, receptacle, or vessel utilized for storing, dispensing, packaging, portioning, or shipping various types of products or objects (including, but not limited to, food and beverage products). Examples of such containers include boxes, cups, "clam shells", jars, bottles, plates, trays, cartons, cases, crates, dishes, egg cartons, lids, straws, envelopes, or other types of holders.

In addition to integrally formed containers, containment products used in conjunction with containers are also

intended to be included within the term "container". Such products include, for example, lids, liners, partitions, wrappers, cushioning materials, utensils, and any other product used in packaging, storing, shipping, portioning, serving, or dispensing an object within a container.

In addition to sheets and containers, any object that can be formed using the highly inorganically filled sheets described herein are also within the scope of the present invention. These include such disparate objects as, for example, model airplanes, toys, venetian blinds, rain gutters, mailing tubes, shirt packaging forms, and temporary car window shades.

The phrases "mass producible" or manufactured in a "commercial" or "economic" manner are intended in the specification and the appended claims to refer to a capability of the sheets described herein to be rapidly produced at a rate that make their manufacture economically comparable to sheets made from other materials, such as paper, paperboard, polystyrene, or metal. The present invention is directed to innovative compositions which solve the prior art problems of incorporating a high percentage of inorganic aggregates into the matrices of products which can be rapidly manufactured by machine, rather than individual hand manufacture of one product at a time (such as "throwing pots").

The sheets, containers, and other objects made therefrom are intended to be competitive in the marketplace with such articles currently made of various materials such as paper, plastic, polystyrene, or metals. Hence, the sheets (and objects made therefrom) of the present invention must be economical to manufacture (i.e., the cost will usually not exceed a few cents per item). Such cost restraints thus require automated production of thousands of the articles in a very short period of time. Hence, requiring the products of the present invention to be economically mass produced is a significant limitation on the qualities of the materials and products.

C. Microstructural Engineering Design

The highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention have been developed from the perspective of microstructural engineering in order to build into the microstructure of the highly inorganically filled material certain desired, predetermined properties, while at the same time remaining cognizant of costs and other manufacturing complications. Furthermore, this microstructural engineering analysis approach, in contrast to the traditional trial-and-error, mix-and-test approach, has resulted in the ability to design highly inorganically filled materials with those properties of strength, weight, insulation, cost, and environmental neutrality that are necessary for appropriate sheets used to make printed materials, containers, and other objects in a significantly more efficient manner.

The number of different raw materials available to engineer a specific product is enormous, with estimates ranging from between fifty thousand and eighty thousand. They can be drawn from such disparately broad classes as metals, polymers, elastomers, ceramics, glasses, composites, and cements. Within a given class, there is some commonality in properties, processing, and use-patterns. Ceramics, for instance, have a high modulus of elasticity, while polymers have a low modulus; metals can be shaped by casting and forging, while composites require lay-up or special molding techniques; hydraulically settable materials, including those made from hydraulic cements historically have low flexural strength, while elastomers have high flexural strength and elongation before rupture.

However, compartmentalization of material properties has its dangers; it can lead to specialization (the metallurgist who knows nothing of ceramics) and to conservative think-

ing ("we use steel because that is what we have always used"). It is this specialization and conservative thinking that has limited the consideration of using highly inorganically filled materials for a variety of products, such as in the manufacture of paper-like sheets.

Nevertheless, once it is realized that highly inorganically filled materials have such a wide utility and can be designed and microstructurally engineered, then their applicability to a variety of possible products becomes obvious. Such materials have an additional advantage over other conventional materials in that they gain their properties under relatively gentle and nondamaging conditions. (Other materials require high energy, severe heat, or harsh chemical processing that significantly affects the material components.) Moreover, certain conventional materials, or components thereof, can be incorporated into the highly inorganically filled materials of the present invention with surprising synergistic properties or results.

The design of the compositions of the present invention has been developed and narrowed, first by primary constraints dictated by the design, and then by seeking the subset of materials which maximizes the performance of the components. At all times during the process, however, it is important to realize the necessity of designing products which can be manufactured in a cost-competitive process.

Primary constraints in materials selection are imposed by characteristics of the design of a component which are critical to a successful product. With respect to a sheet used to make, for example, a food and beverage container, those primary constraints include minimal weight, strength (both compressive and tensile), and toughness requirements, while simultaneously keeping the cost comparable to that of paper, plastic, and metal counterparts.

As discussed above, one of the problems with materials having high concentrations of inorganic materials in the past has been that they are typically poured into a form, worked, and then allowed to set, harden, and cure over a long period of time—even days or weeks. Such time periods are certainly impractical for the economic mass production of disposable containers and similar products.

As a result, an important feature of the present invention is that when the highly inorganically filled mixture is molded into a sheet, it will maintain its shape (i.e., support its own weight subject to minor forces, such as gravity and movement through the processing equipment) in the green state without external support. Further, from a manufacturing perspective, in order for production to be economical, it is important that the molded sheet rapidly (in a matter of minutes, or even seconds) achieves sufficient strength so that it can be handled using ordinary manufacturing procedures, even though the highly inorganically filled mixture may still be in a green state and not fully hardened.

Another advantage of the microstructural engineering and materials science approach of the present invention is the ability to develop compositions in which cross-sections of the structural matrix are more homogeneous than have been typically achieved in the prior art. Ideally, when any two given samples of about 1-2 mm³ of the inorganically filled structural matrix are taken, they will have substantially similar amounts of voids, aggregates, fibers, any other additives, and properties of the matrix.

In its simplest form, the process of using materials science in microstructurally engineering and designing an inorganically filled material comprises characterizing, analyzing, and modifying (if necessary): (a) the aggregates, (b) the predicted particle packing, (c) the system rheology, (d) the average fiber length and packing density, and (e) the pro-

cessing and energy of the manufacturing system. In characterizing the aggregates, the average particle size is determined, the natural packing density of the particles (which is a function of the shape of the particles) is determined, and the strength of the particles is ascertained.

With this information, the particle packing can be predicted according to mathematical models. It has been established that the particle packing is a primary factor for designing desired requirements of the ultimate product, such as workability, form stability, shrinkage, bulk density, insulative capabilities, tensile, compressive, and flexural strengths, elasticity, durability, and cost optimization. The particle packing is affected not only by the particle and aggregate characterization, but also by the amount of water and its relationship to the interstitial void volume of the packed aggregates.

System rheology is a function of both macro-rheology and micro-rheology. The macro-rheology is the relationship of the solid particles with respect to each other as defined by the particle packing. The micro-rheology is a function of the lubricant fraction of the system. By modification of the lubricants (which may be water, the water-dispersible binder, plasticizers, dispersants, or other materials), the viscosity and yield stress can be chemically modified. The microrheology can also be modified physically by changing the shape and size of the particles: e.g., chopped fibers, plate-like mica, round-shaped silice fume, or hydraulically settable binder particles will interact with the lubricants differently.

Finally, the manufacturing process can be modified to manipulate the balance between workability and form stability. As applied to the present invention, this becomes important in significantly increasing the yield stress during formation of the sheet by either chemical additives (such as by adding a particular water-dispersible binder) or by adding energy to the system (such as by heating the molds). Indeed, it is this discovery of how to manipulate the inorganically filled compositions in order to quickly increase the form stability of the compositions during the formation process that make the present invention such a significant advancement in the art.

From the following discussion, it will be appreciated how each of the component materials within the inorganically filled mixture, as well as the processing parameters, contributes to the primary design constraints of the particular sheet to be manufactured so that it can be economically mass produced. Specific compositions are set forth in the examples given later in order to demonstrate how the maximization of the performance of each component accomplishes the combination of desired properties.

D. Moldable Mixtures

The terms "inorganically filled mixture" or "moldable mixture" have interchangeable meanings and shall refer to a mixture that can be molded into the sheets which are disclosed and claimed herein. Such mixtures are characterized by having a high concentration of inorganic filler or aggregate (at least about 40% by volume of the total solids content of the dried sheet), water, a water-dispersible binder, and a fibrous material. The mixtures may also include other admixtures such as plasticizers, lubricants, dispersants, hydraulically settable binders, and air void forming agents.

Moldable mixtures are characterized as having a relatively high yield stress, which makes them highly workable and cohesive, yet form stable immediately or shortly after being molded into the desired shape. The terms "inorganically filled mixture", "inorganically filled moldable mixture", or "moldable mixture" shall refer to the mixture

regardless of the extent of drying or curing that has taken place. Such mixtures shall include mixtures that are highly workable, which are partially dried, and which have been completely dried (although a certain amount of water will usually remain within the sheets as bound water within the water-dispersible binder).

After the moldable mixture has been formed into the desired shape, the resulting sheet or object made therefrom will have a "highly filled inorganic/organic polymer matrix", "inorganically filled matrix", or "inorganically filled, organic polymer matrix". These terms shall refer to such matrices regardless of the extent of drying or curing that has taken place, the only limitation being that the sheet or object made therefrom is form stable. Nevertheless, a highly filled inorganic matrix can refer to a fresh sheet or object made therefrom, as well as a sheet or object that has been partially or totally dry.

Both the moldable mixture and the inorganically filled matrix formed therefrom each constitute "highly inorganically filled materials" or "highly inorganically filled composites". As before, these terms shall refer to materials or composites without regard to the extent of wetting, setting, drying, or hardening that has taken place. They shall include materials and composites in a green (i.e., unhardened) state, as well as semi-dry or hardened materials after they have been molded into sheets, or containers or other objects made therefrom.

E. Water-Dispersible Organic Binders.

The moldable mixtures used to manufacture the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention develop strength properties through the drying out of a substantially solvated water dispersible organic binder. The moldable mixtures first develop workability and flow properties by adding an amount of water to the mixture sufficient to lubricate the solid inorganic aggregate particles and fibers, and to solvate, or at least disperse, the water-dispersible organic binder. Thereafter, the removal of water, such as by evaporation, allows the water-dispersible binder to develop its maximum strength properties.

For example, certain starch-based materials can be purchased as tiny granules which are in a powder-like form. The starch based binder is "activated" by dissolving and gelating the starch binder in water by heating the dispersion above the gelation temperature. After the water has been removed, such starch based materials can, by themselves, have tensile strengths of up to about 40-50 MPa. Through careful microstructural engineering, the highly inorganically filled sheets (and containers or other objects made therefrom) can have varying tensile strengths, even approaching 40 MPa in some cases.

The water-dispersible organic binder not only binds the individual aggregate particles and fibers together within the mixture upon drying or hardening (thereby forming a structural or highly inorganically filled matrix), but they also have the general tendency of affecting the rheology of the moldable mixture. In fact, the water-dispersible binders disclosed herein have been used in cementitious and other hydraulically settable mixtures as rheology-modifying agents, although it has been understood that they also impart a degree of binding to the final hardened material if included in large enough amounts.

The various water-dispersible organic binders contemplated by the present invention can be roughly organized into the following categories: (1) polysaccharides and derivatives thereof, (2) proteins and derivatives thereof, and (3) synthetic organic materials. Polysaccharide rheology-modifying agents can be further subdivided into (a)

cellulose-based materials and derivatives thereof, (b) starch-based materials and derivatives thereof, and (c) other polysaccharides.

Suitable cellulose-based binders include, for example, methylhydroxyethylcellulose, carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose, ethylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose, hydroxyethylpropylcellulose, etc. The entire range of possible permutations is enormous and shall not be listed here, but other cellulose materials which have the same or similar properties as these would also work well. Some cellulose-based binders can also be cross-polymerized in solution; an example of this is Cellosize®, a hydroxyethyl-cellulose product available from Union Carbide. Cellosize® can be cross-linked in water with dialdehydes, methylol ureas, or melamine-formaldehyde resins, thereby forming a less water-soluble binder.

Suitable starch-based binders include, for example, amylopectin, amylose, scagel, starch acetates, starch hydroxyethyl ethers, ionic starches, long-chain alkyl starches, dextrins, amine starches, phosphates starches, and dialdehyde starches.

Other natural polysaccharide-based binders include, for example, alginic acid, phycocolloids, agar, gum arabic, guar gum, locust bean gum, gum karaya, and gum tragacanth.

Suitable protein-based binders include, for example, Zein® (a prolamine derived from corn), collagen (derivatives extracted from animal connective tissue such as gelatin and glue), and casein (the principle protein in cow's milk).

Finally, suitable synthetic organic binders that are water dispersible include, for example, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyethylene glycol, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylmethyl ether, polyacrylic acids, polyacrylic acid salts, polyvinyl acrylic acids, polyvinyl acrylic acid salts, polyacrylimides, ethylene oxide polymers, polyalactic acid, and latex (which is a broad category that includes a variety of polymerizable substances formed in a water emulsion; an example is styrene-butadiene copolymer).

40 The water-dispersible organic binders within the moldable mixtures of the present invention are preferably included in an amount such that a hardened sheet manufactured therefrom will contain from about 1% to about 50% organic binder by volume of the total solids within the hardened sheet, more preferably from about 2% to about 45 30%, and most preferably from about 5% to about 20%.

F. Water.

As set forth above, water is added to the moldable mixture in order to solvate, or at least disperse, the water-dispersible organic binder within the mixture. In many cases, some of the water actually reacts with and becomes chemically bound within the organic binder. In other cases it may be more loosely bound to the organic binder, often by means of hydrogen bonding. Certain amounts of water may also react with other admixtures within the mixture, such as hydraulically settable binders or other materials which chemically react with water.

The water also serves the function of creating a moldable mixture having the desired rheological properties, including viscosity and yield stress. These properties are general ways of approximating the "workability" or flow properties of the moldable mixture.

In order for the moldable mixture to have adequate workability, water must generally be included in quantities sufficient to wet each of the inorganic aggregate particles, fibers, or other solid particles, to solvate or at least disperse the organic binder, and to at least partially fill the interstices

or voids between the particles. In some cases, such as where a dispersant or a lubricant is added, adequate workability can be maintained while using less water initially.

The amount of water that is added to the moldable mixture must be carefully balanced so that the mixture is sufficiently workable, while at the same time recognizing that lowering the initial water content increases both the green strength and the final strength of the hardened product. Less water results in a stronger final product because the total porosity is reduced during the molding processes. Moreover, if less water is initially included in the moldable mixture, less water must be removed in order to cause the molded product or sheet to harden.

The appropriate rheology to meet these needs can be defined in terms of yield stress. The yield stress of the moldable mixture will preferably be in the range from about 2 kPa to about 5 MPa, more preferably in the range from about 100 kPa to about 1 MPa, and less preferably in the range from about 200 kPa to about 700 kPa. The desired level of yield stress can be adjusted and optimized to the particular molding process being used to form the sheet or other object made therefrom.

In some cases it may be desirable to initially include a relatively high amount of water in light of the fact that excess water can later be removed by heating the molded sheet during or shortly after the molding process. Nonetheless, one of the important features of the present invention as compared to the manufacture of conventional paper is that the amount of water initially within the moldable mixture is far less than the amount normally found in fiber slurries used to make conventional paper. This results in a mixture having far greater yield stress and form stability compared to paper-making slurries. The result is that the total amount of water that must be removed from the moldable mixture to obtain a self-supporting material (i.e., a form stable material) is much less in the case of the mixtures of the present invention compared to the slurries used to manufacture conventional paper. In fact, conventional paper-making slurries have virtually no form stability until they have been dewatered to a significant degree.

As set forth more fully below, the sizes of the individual aggregate particles and fibers can be selected in order to increase the particle packing density of the resulting moldable mixture. The amount of water that must be added in order to obtain a moldable mixture having a particular rheology or yield stress will, to a large extent, depend on the particle-packing density. For example, if the particle-packing density of the moldable mixture is 0.65, water will be included in an amount of roughly 35% by volume in order to substantially fill the interstitial voids between the particles. On the other hand, a moldable mixture having a particle-packing density of 0.95 will only require water in an amount of about 5% by volume in order to substantially fill the interstitial voids. This is a seven-fold decrease in the amount of water which must be added in order to substantially fill the interstitial voids, which influences the rheology and workability of the moldable mixture.

In light of the foregoing, the amount of water which should be added to the mixture will depend to a large extent on the level of particle packing density within the mixture, the amount of water-dispersible binder that is added, as well as the desired rheology of the resultant moldable mixture. Hence, the amount of water that will be added to form the moldable mixture will range from as little as 5% to as high as 50% by volume of the moldable mixture. The exact amount of water will greatly vary depending on the volume and identity of other components and admixtures within the

mixture. One skilled in the art will be able to adjust the level of water to obtain adequate workability for any given manufacturing process.

It is preferable in most cases to include the minimum amount of water that is required to give the moldable mixture the desired level of workability, and thereby reduce the amount of water that must be removed from the processed sheet. Decreasing the amount of water that must be removed generally reduces the cost of manufacture since removing water requires energy. Nevertheless, the compositions of the present invention include far less water, even at the upper ranges of water inclusion, compared to slurries used to make paper, which generally contain more than 95% water by volume.

G. Aggregates.

Inorganic materials commonly used in the paper industry, as well as more finely ground aggregate materials used in the concrete industry, may be used in the moldable mixtures of the present invention. Nevertheless, the size of the aggregate or inorganic filler materials will often be many times larger than inorganic filler materials used in the paper industry. While the average diameter of the particles within the inorganic fillers used in the paper industry will usually be less than 2 microns, the average particle diameter of the aggregate materials used in the present invention can, in some cases, be up to 100 microns or larger depending on the wall thickness of the resulting sheet and, hence, be less expensive in general.

Not only are the inorganic filler materials used in the paper industry required to be much smaller than the aggregate particles used in the moldable mixtures of the present invention, but they also are generally more uniformly sized in the former compared to the latter. In fact, it is often preferable to use a wide range of particle sizes in the present invention in order to increase the particle-packing density of the moldable mixture. Uniformly sized particles typically have a packing density of about 0.624. The result is that the inorganic materials used in the present invention will generally cost far less than the inorganic filler materials used in the paper industry.

It is far more expensive to maintain the extremely small particle size tolerances required in the paper industry, as well as maintaining a general uniformity of particle size. The greatly increased range of particle sizes also allows for a much larger variety of inorganic aggregate materials to be used in the present invention compared to in the manufacture of paper.

Because of the much larger variety of aggregate materials that may be added to the moldable mixtures of the present invention compared to the inorganic fillers used to manufacture paper, the aggregate materials of the present invention may be selected to impart a much larger variety of properties to the final sheet. Whereas in paper, the inorganic filler is added mainly to affect the color and the surface quality of the resulting sheet of paper, the aggregate materials employed in the present invention can be added to increase the strength (tensile and, especially, compressive strength), increase the modulus of elasticity and elongation, decrease the cost by acting as an inexpensive filler, decrease the weight, and/or increase the insulation ability of the resultant highly inorganically filled sheet. In addition, plate-like aggregates, such as mica and kaolin, can be used in order to create a smooth surface finish in the sheets of the present invention. Typically, larger aggregates, such as calcium carbonate, give a matte surface, while smaller particles give a glass surface. The advantage of the present invention over the manufacture of conventional paper is that any of these materials may be added directly into the matrix.

Examples of useful aggregates include perlite, vermiculite, sand, gravel, rock, limestone, sandstone, glass beads, aerogels, xerogels, seagel, mica, clay, synthetic clay, alumina, silica, fly ash, fumed silica, fused silica, tabular alumina, kaolin, microspheres, hollow glass spheres, porous ceramic spheres, gypsum dihydrate, calcium carbonate, calcium aluminate, cork, seeds, lightweight polymers, xonotlite (a crystalline calcium silicate gel), lightweight expanded clays, hydrated or unhydrated hydraulic cement particles, pumice, exfoliated rock, and other geologic materials. Partially hydrated and hydrated cement, as well as silica fume, have a high surface area and give excellent benefits such as high initial cohesiveness of the freshly formed sheet.

Even discarded inorganically filled materials, such as discarded sheets, containers, or other objects of the present invention can be employed as aggregate fillers and strengtheners. It will also be appreciated that the sheets and other objects of the present invention can be easily and effectively recycled by simply adding them to fresh moldable mixtures as an aggregate filler.

Both clay and gypsum are particularly important aggregate materials because of their ready availability, extreme low cost, workability, ease of formation, and because they can also provide a degree of binding and strength if added in high enough amounts. "Clay" is a term that refers to materials found in the earth that have certain chemical compositions and properties. The predominant clays include silica and alumina (used for making pottery, tiles, brick, and pipes) and kaolinite. The kaolinitic clays are anauxite, which has the chemical formula $Al_2O_3 \cdot SiO_2 \cdot H_2O$, and montmorillonite, which has the chemical formula $Al_2O_3 \cdot SiO_2 \cdot H_2O$. However, clays may contain a wide variety of other substances, such as iron oxide, titanium oxide, calcium oxide, calcium oxide, zirconium oxide, and pyrite.

In addition, although clays have been used for millennia and can obtain hardness even without being fired, such unfired clays are vulnerable to water degradation and exposure, are extremely brittle, and have low strength. Nevertheless, clay makes a good, inexpensive aggregate within the inorganically filled composites of the present invention.

Similarly, gypsum hemihydrate is also hydratable and forms the dihydrate of calcium sulfate in the presence of water. Thus, gypsum may exhibit the characteristics of both an aggregate and a binder depending on whether (and the concentration of) the hemihydrate or dihydrate form is added to a moldable mixture.

Even hydraulic cement, such as portland cement, can be added as an inorganic filler material within the moldable mixtures of the present invention. Not only are hydraulic cements relatively inexpensive and plentiful, but they also can impart a degree of binding to the inorganically filled matrix if included in high enough amounts. In addition, hydraulic cement chemically reacts with water, thereby causing an internal drying effect within the moldable mixture which effectively removes at least some of the water within the mixture without the need for evaporation. The same is true for gypsum hemihydrate and calcined clay. Prehydrated cement particles may also be added as an aggregate filler. One difference between unhydrated and prehydrated cement is that the latter has a distinctly different morphology, including microgel and platelets.

In addition, the hydraulic cement can effect the rheology of the moldable mixture, at least in part, by chemically reacting with the water, thereby diminishing the amount of water available to lubricate the aggregate particles and fibers. In addition, it has been found that portland grey

cement increases the internal cohesion of the moldable mixture, perhaps because of the increase in amount of aluminates within this type of cement. Finally, although the mechanism is not clear, it appears that hydraulic cement may interact to some degree with the large number of hydroxyl groups present on many organic polymer binders. The hydroxyl groups of such binders will, at a minimum, have hydrogen bonding-like interactions with the highly polar hydraulic cement gel products, being known to adsorb onto the surface of cement particles.

Because of the nature of the moldable mixtures and sheets made therefrom, it is possible to include lightweight aggregates having a high amount of interstitial space in order to impart an insulation effect with the molded sheets. Examples of aggregates which can add a lightweight characteristic to the moldable mixture include perlite, vermiculite, glass beads, hollow glass spheres, synthetic materials (e.g., porous ceramic spheres, tabular alumina, etc.), cork, lightweight expanded clays, sand, gravel, rock, limestone, sandstone, pumice, and other geological materials.

In addition to conventional aggregates used in the paper and cement industries, a wide variety of other aggregates, including fillers, strengtheners, including metals and metal alloys (such as stainless steel, calcium aluminate, iron, copper, silver, and gold), balls or hollow spherical materials (such as glass, polymeric, and metals), filings, pellets, powders (such as microsilica), and fibers (such as graphite, silica, alumina, fiberglass, polymeric, organic fibers, and other such fibers typically used to prepare various types of composites), may be added to the moldable mixtures within the scope of the present invention. Even materials such as seeds, starches, gelatins, and agar-type materials can be incorporated as aggregates. Although these later aggregates are organic (although readily biodegradable), they are included here because they act primarily as a filler not a binder.

Another class of aggregates that may be added to the inorganically filled mixture includes gels and microgels such as silica gel, calcium silicate gel, aluminum silicate gel, and the like. These can be added in solid form as any ordinary aggregate material might, or they may be precipitated in situ. Because they tend to absorb water, they can be added to reduce the water content (which will increase the yield stress) of the moldable mixture.

In addition, the highly hygroscopic nature of silicabased gels and microgels allows them to be used as moisture regulation agents within the final hardened sheet. By absorbing moisture from the air, the gels and microgels will cause the inorganically filled sheets to retain a predetermined amount of moisture under normal ambient conditions. (Of course, the rate of moisture absorption from the air will correlate with the relative humidity of the air). Controlling the moisture content of the sheets allows for more careful control of the elongation, modulus of elasticity, bendability, foldability, flexibility, and ductility of the sheets.

It is also within the scope of the present invention to include polymerizable inorganic aggregate materials, such as polymerizable silicates, within the moldable mixture. These may be added to the mixture as ordinary silica or silicates, which are then treated to cause a polymerization reaction in situ in order to create the polymerized silicate aggregate. Polymerized inorganic aggregates are often advantageous in certain applications because of their increased flexibility compared to most other inorganic aggregate materials.

It is often preferable, according to the present invention, to include a plurality of differently sized and graded aggre-

gates capable of more completely filling the interstices between the aggregate particles and fibers within the moldable mixture. Optimizing the particle packing density reduces the amount of water that is required to obtain the desired level of workability by eliminating spaces which would otherwise be filled with interstitial water, often referred to as "capillary water."

In order to optimize the packing density, differently sized aggregates with particle sizes ranging from as small as about 0.05 microns to as large as about 2 mm may be used. (Of course, the desired purpose and thickness of the resulting product will dictate the appropriate particle sizes of the various aggregates to be used.) It is within the skill of one in the art to know generally the identity and sizes of the aggregates to be used in order to achieve the desired rheological properties of the green moldable mixtures, as well as the final strength and weight properties of the final hardened inorganically filled composite.

In certain preferred embodiments of the present invention, it may be desirable to maximize the amount of the aggregates within the moldable mixture in order to maximize the properties and characteristics of the aggregates (such as qualities of strength, low density, or high insulation). The use of particle packing techniques may be employed within the highly inorganically filled material in order to maximize the amount of such aggregates.

A detailed discussion of particle packing can be found in the following article coauthored by one of the inventors of the present invention: Johansen, V. & Andersen, P. J., "Particle Packing and Concrete Properties," *Materials Science of Concrete II* at 111-147, The American Ceramic Society (1991). Further information is available in the Doctoral Dissertation of Anderson, P. J., "Control and Monitoring of Concrete Production—A Study of Particle Packing and Rheology," The Danish Academy of Technical Sciences. For purposes of disclosure, the foregoing article and doctoral dissertation are incorporated herein by specific reference. The advantages of such packing of the aggregates can be further understood by reference to the examples which follow in which hollow glass spheres of varying sizes are mixed in order to maximize the amount of the insulating spheres within the moldable mixture.

In embodiments in which it is desirable to obtain a sheet (or object made therefrom) having high insulation capability, it may be preferable to incorporate into the highly inorganically filled matrix a lightweight aggregate which has a low thermal conductivity, or "k-factor" (defined as W/m.K). The k-factor is roughly the reciprocal of the expression commonly used in the United States to describe the overall thermal resistance of a given material, or "R-factor," which is generally defined as having units of hr.ft²/F/BTU. The term R-factor is most commonly used in the United States to describe the overall thermal resistance of a given material without regard to the thickness of the material. However, for purposes of comparison, it is common to normalize the R-factor to describe thermal resistance per inch of thickness of the material in question of hr.ft²/F/ BTU.in.

For purposes of this specification, the insulation ability of a given material will here and after be expressed only in terms of the IUPAC method of describing thermal conductivity, i.e., "k-factor." (The conversion of thermal resistance expressed in British units (hr.ft²/F/BTU.in) to IUPAC units can be performed by multiplying the normalized number by 6.9335 and then taking the reciprocal of the product.) Generally, aggregates having a very low k-factor also contain large amounts of trapped interstitial space, air,

mixtures of gases, or a partial vacuum which also tends to greatly reduce the strength of such aggregates. Therefore, concerns for insulation and strength tend to compete and should be carefully balanced when designing a particular mixed design.

The preferred insulating, lightweight aggregates include expanded or exfoliated vermiculite, perlite, calcined diatomaceous earth, and hollow glass spheres—all of which tend to contain large amounts of incorporated interstitial space. However, this list is in no way intended to be exhaustive, these aggregates being chosen because of their low cost and ready availability. Nevertheless, any aggregate with a low k-factor, which is able to impart sufficient insulation properties to the sheet or other article made therefrom, is within the scope of the present invention.

In light of the foregoing, the amount of aggregate which will be added to the moldable mixture will depend on a variety of factors, including the quantity and identities of the other added components, as well as the particle packing density of the aggregates themselves. The inorganic aggregate will preferably be included in an amount as low as about 40% by volume of the total solids content of the hardened sheet, and as high as about 98%, more preferably in the range from about 50% to about 95%, and most preferably in the range from about 60% to about 80% by volume of the total solids.

As set forth above, differently sized aggregate materials may be added in varying amounts in order to affect the particle-packing density of the moldable mixture. Depending upon the natural packing density of each aggregate material, as well as the relative sizes of the particles, it is possible that the resulting volume of the combined aggregates will be less than the sum of the volumes of the aggregates before they were mixed.

35 H. Fibers.

As used in the specification and the appended claims, the terms "fibers" and "fibrous materials" include both inorganic fibers and organic fibers. Fibers are a particular kind of aggregate which may be added to the moldable mixture to increase the cohesion, elongation ability, deflection ability, toughness, fracture energy, and flexural, tensile, and on occasion compressive strengths of the resulting inorganically filled material. Fibrous materials reduce the likelihood that the highly inorganically filled sheets, or articles made therefrom, will shatter when cross-sectional forces are applied.

Fibers which may be incorporated into the inorganically filled matrix preferably include naturally occurring organic fibers, such as cellulosic fibers extracted from hemp, cotton, plant leaves, wood, or stems, or inorganic fibers made from glass, graphite, silica, ceramic, or metal materials.

Preferred fibers of choice include glass fibers, abaca, bagasse, wood fibers (both hard wood or soft wood, examples of which include southern hardwood and southern pine, respectively), and cotton. Recycled paper fibers can be used, but they are somewhat less desirable because of the fiber disruption that occurs during the original paper manufacturing process. Any equivalent fiber, however, which imparts strength and flexibility is also within the scope of the present invention. For purposes of illustration, abaca fibers are available from Isarog Inc. in the Philippines, while glass fibers, such as Cemfill®, are available from Pilkington Corp. in England.

These fibers are preferably used in the present invention due to their low cost, high strength, and ready availability. Nevertheless, any equivalent fiber which imparts compressive and tensile strength, as well as toughness and flexibility

(to the extent needed), is certainly within the scope of the present invention. The only limiting criteria is that the fibers impart the desired properties without adversely reacting with the other constituents of the inorganically filled material and without contaminating the materials (such as food) stored or dispensed in objects made from sheets containing such fibers.

The fibers used in making the sheets of the present invention preferably have a high length to width ratio (or "aspect ratio") because longer, narrower fibers can impart more strength to the inorganically filled structural matrix without significantly adding bulk and mass to the composite materials. The fibers should have an average aspect ratio of at least about 10:1, preferably at least about 100:1, and most preferably greater than about 200:1. Nevertheless, fibers having a smaller aspect ratio are generally more easily placed within the sheet and yield a sheet with more uniformity and fewer defects.

The amount of fibers added to the moldable mixture will vary depending upon the desired properties of the final product, with tensile strength, toughness, flexibility, and cost being the principle criteria for determining the amount of fiber to be added in any mix design. The concentration of fibers within the final hardened sheet will preferably be in the range from about 0.5% to about 50% by volume of the total solids content, more preferably from about 2% to about 30%, and most preferably from about 5% to about 20%. (In light of these ranges and those given with respect to the organic polymer binder, the total amount of organics within the hardened sheet will preferably be less than about 60% by volume of the total solids content, more preferably less than about 40%, and most preferably less than about 30%).

It has been found that slight increases of fiber concentration below about 20% fiber by volume tend to dramatically increase the strength, toughness, and bending endurance of the finished sheet. Adding fibers above about 20% by volume will produce a less dramatic increase in the strength and flexibility of the sheet, although such increases may be economically justified in some circumstances.

It will be appreciated, however, that the strength of the fiber is a very important feature in determining the amount of the fiber to be used. The stronger the tensile strength of the fiber, the less the amount of fiber that must be used to obtain a given tensile strength in the resulting product. Of course, while some fibers have a high tensile and tear and burst strength, other types of fibers with a lower tensile strength may be more elastic. Fibers with a smaller aspect ratio are more easily placed and yield a sheet with fewer defects, while a larger aspect ratio increases the strength-imparting effect of the fiber. A combination of two or more fibers may be desirable in order to obtain a resulting product that maximized multiple characteristics, such as higher tensile strength, higher elasticity, or better fiber placement.

It should also be understood that some fibers, such as southern pine and abaca, have high tear and burst strengths, while others, such as cotton, have lower strength but greater flexibility. In the case where better placement, higher flexibility, and higher tear and burst strength are desired, a combination of fibers having varying aspect ratios and strength properties can be added to the mixture. For example, a mixture of southern hard wood and southern pine allows for better dispersion of the fibers throughout the moldable mixture, yielding a sheet with good fiber dispersion and excellent folding endurance. In any event, as set forth more fully above, the fibers used in the present invention preferably do not undergo the intense processing of fibers used to make paper. Because of this, they maintain far more of their original strength.

Finally, it is known that certain fibers and inorganic fillers are able to chemically interact and bind with certain starch-based organic polymer binders, thereby adding another dimension to the materials of the present invention. For example, it is known that many fibers and inorganic fillers are anionic in nature and have a negative charge. Therefore, in order to maximize the interaction between the organic binder and the anionic fibers and inorganic materials, it may be advantageous to add a positively charged organic binder, such as a cationic starch.

Better water resistance can be obtained by treating the fibers with rosin and alum ($Al_2(SO_4)_3$) or $NaAl(SO_4)_2$, the latter of which precipitate out the rosin onto the fiber surface making it highly hydrophobic. The aluminum floc that is formed by the alum creates an anionic adsorption site on the fiber surface for a positively charged organic binder, such as a cationic starch.

I. Dispersants

The term "dispersant" is used herein to refer to the class of materials which can be added to reduce the viscosity and yield stress of the moldable mixture. A more detailed description of the use of dispersants may be found in the Master's Thesis of Andersen, P. J., "Effects of Organic Superplasticizing Admixtures and their Components on Zeta Potential and Related Properties of Cement Materials" (The Pennsylvania State University Materials Research Laboratory, 1987). For purposes of disclosure, the foregoing Master's Thesis is incorporated herein by specific reference.

Dispersants generally work by being adsorbed onto the surface of the aggregate particles and/or into the near colloid double layer of the particles, particularly if hydraulic cement particles are added. This creates a negative charge on or around the surfaces of the particles causing them to repel each other. This repulsion of the particles adds "lubrication" by reducing the friction or attractive forces that would otherwise cause the particles to have greater interaction. Hence, the packing density is increased somewhat and less water may be added initially while maintaining the workability of the moldable mixture.

Greatly reducing the viscosity and yield stress may be desirable where plastic-like properties, cohesiveness, and/or form stability are less important. Adding a dispersant aids in keeping the moldable mixture workable even when very little water is added.

Nevertheless, due to the nature of the coating mechanism of the dispersant, the order in which the dispersant is added to the mixture can often be critical. If certain water-dispersible organic binders (such as Tylose®) are used, the dispersant should be added to a mixture containing water and at least part of the inorganic aggregates first and then the binder should be added second. Otherwise, the dispersant will be less able to become adsorbed onto the surface of the aggregate particles because the Tylose® will first be irreversibly adsorbed, thereby forming a protective colloid on the surface and thereby preventing the dispersant from being adsorbed.

A preferred dispersant is sulfonated naphthaleneformaldehyde condensate, an example of which is marketed under the trademark WRDA 19, which is available from W. R. Grace, Inc. Other dispersants which can also work well include sulfonated melamine-formaldehyde condensate, lignosulfonate, and polycrylic acid.

The dispersants contemplated within the present invention have sometimes been referred to in the concrete industry as "superplasticizers." In order to better distinguish dispersants from other rheology-modifying agents, which often act as plasticizers, the term "superplasticizer" will not be used in this specification.

The amount of added dispersant will generally range up to about 5% by weight of the water, more preferably in the range from about 0.5% to about 4%, and most preferably within the range from about 1% to about 2%.

5. Air Voids.

Where insulation, not strength, is the overriding factor (i.e., whether it is desired to insulate hot or cold materials), it may be desirable to incorporate tiny air voids within the structural matrix of the sheets in addition to lightweight aggregates in order to increase the insulating properties of the sheet or article made therefrom. The incorporation of air voids into the moldable mixture is carefully calculated to impart the requisite insulation characteristics without degrading the strength of the sheet to the point of nonutility. Generally, however, if insulation is not an important feature of a particular product, it is desirable to minimize any air voids in order to maximize strength and minimize volume.

In certain embodiments, nonagglomerated air voids may be introduced by high shear, high speed mixing of moldable mixture, with a foaming or stabilizing agent added to the mixture to aid in the incorporation of air voids. The high shear, high energy mixers discussed above are particularly useful in achieving this desired goal. Suitable foaming and air entraining agents include commonly used surfactants. One currently preferred surfactant is a polypeptide alkylene polyol, such as Mearcrete® Foam Liquid.

In conjunction with the surfactant, it will be necessary to stabilize the entrained air within the material using a stabilizing agent like Mearcel 3532®, a synthetic liquid anionic biodegradable solution. Both Mearcrete® and Mearcel® are available from the Mearl Corporation in New Jersey. Another foaming and air-entraining agent is vinsol resin. In addition, the organic polymeric binder can act to stabilize the entrained air. Different air-entraining agents and stabilizing agents impart different degrees of foam stability to the inorganically filled mixture, and they should be chosen in order to impart the properties that are best suited for a particular manufacturing process.

Foam stability helps maintain the dispersion, and prevents the agglomeration, of the air voids within the unhardened moldable mixture. Failure to prevent the coalescence of the air voids actually decreases the insulation effect, and it also greatly decreases the strength of the hardened moldable mixture. Raising the pH, increasing the concentration of soluble alkali metals such as sodium or potassium, adding a stabilizing agent such as a polysaccharide rheology-modifying agent, and carefully adjusting the concentrations of surfactant and water within the moldable mixture all help to increase the foam stability of the mixture.

During the process of molding and/or hardening the moldable mixture, it is often desirable to heat the moldable mixture in order to increase the volume of the air void system. Heating also aids in rapidly removing significant amounts of the water from the moldable mixture, thereby increasing the green strength of the molded product.

If a gas has been incorporated into the moldable mixture, heating the mixture to 250° C., for example, will result (according to the ideal gas equation) in the gas increasing its volume by about 85%. When heating is appropriate, it has been found desirable for the heating to be within a range from about 100° C. to about 250° C. The upper limit is set by any adverse reactions within the moldable mixture that might occur, such as the burning of the fibers or organic binder. More importantly, if properly controlled, heating will not result in the cracking of the structural matrix of the sheet, or yield imperfections in the surface texture of the sheet.

Another foaming agent is a mixture of citric acid and bicarbonate or bicarbonate that has been processed into

small granules or particles and coated with wax, starch, or water soluble coatings. This can be used in void formation two ways: (1) to react with water and form CO₂ gas in order to create a cellular foam structure within the inorganically filled matrix or (2) to pack the particles as part of the matrix and after hardening the matrix remove the foam particles by heating the product above 180° C., which causes an endothermic decomposition of the particles, leaving behind a well controlled cellular lightweight structure.

In other applications, where the viscosity of the moldable mixture is high, such as is required in certain molding processes, it is much more difficult to obtain adequate numbers of air voids through high shear mixing. In this case, air voids may alternatively be introduced into the moldable mixture by adding an easily oxidized metal, such as aluminum, magnesium, zinc, or tin to a mixture that is either naturally alkaline (such as a mixture containing hydraulic cement or calcium oxide) or one that has been made alkaline by the addition of a strong base, such as sodium hydroxide. This reaction results in the evolution of tiny hydrogen bubbles throughout the moldable mixture.

It may further be desirable to heat the mixture in order to initiate the chemical reaction and increase the rate of formation of hydrogen bubbles. It has been found that heating the molded product to temperatures in the range of from about 50° C. to about 100° C., and preferably about 75° C. to about 85° C., effectively controls the reaction and also drives off a significant amount of the water. Again, this heating process can be controlled so that it does not result in the introduction of cracks into the matrix of the molded product. This second method of introducing air voids into the structural matrix can be used in conjunction with, or in place of, the introduction of air through high speed, high shear mixing in the case of lower viscosity moldable mixtures used in some molding processes.

Finally, air voids may be introduced into the moldable mixture during the molding process by adding a blowing agent to the mixture, which will expand when heat is added to the mixture. Blowing agents typically consist of a low boiling point liquid and finely divided calcium carbonate (chalk). The talc and blowing agent are uniformly mixed into the moldable mixture and kept under pressure while heated. The liquid blowing agent penetrates into the pores of the individual chalk particles, which act as points from which the blowing agent can then be vaporized upon thermal expansion of the blowing agent as the pressure is suddenly reduced.

During the molding or extrusion process, the mixture is heated while at the same time it is compressed. While the heat would normally cause the blowing agent to vaporize, the increase in pressure prevents the agent from vaporizing, thereby temporarily creating an equilibrium. When the pressure is released after the molding or extrusion of the material, the blowing agent vaporizes, thereby expanding or "blowing" the moldable material. The moldable material eventually hardens with very finely dispersed voids throughout the inorganically filled structural matrix. Water can also act as a blowing agent as long as the mixture is heated above the boiling point of water and kept under pressure of up to 50 bars.

Air voids increase the insulative properties of the sheets and other articles made therefrom and also greatly decrease the bulk density and, hence, the weight of the final product. This reduces the overall mass of the resultant product, which reduces the amount of material that is required for the manufacture of the sheets and which reduces the amount of material that will ultimately be discarded in the case of disposable sheets or containers made therefrom.

II. Manufacturing Sheets From Moldable Mixtures.

A comprehensive production sequence of the present invention is set forth in FIG. 1A, including the apparatus for carrying out the following manufacturing steps: (1) mixing the moldable mixture; (2) extruding the mixture into a sheet, pipe, or other object through an appropriate extruder die; (3) passing the extruded sheet through a series of paired rollers in order to reduce the thickness and/or improve the surface qualities of the sheet; (4) at least partially drying the sheet by rolling it onto one or more drying rollers; (5) optionally compacting the sheet while in a slightly moist condition in order to eliminate unwanted spaces within the inorganically filled matrix of the sheet and to increase the density and resulting strength of the sheet; (6) optionally drying the sheet after it has been compacted; (7) optionally finishing the sheet by passing it between one or more pairs of rollers, including one hard and one soft roller; and (8) optionally rolling the substantially hardened and dried sheet onto a spool to form a roll which can be stored and used when needed.

A more detailed discussion of similar processes used to manufacture sheets having a hydraulically settable structural matrix is set forth in the Andersen-Hodson Technology. For purposes of disclosure, this reference is incorporated herein by specific reference.

In the case where the moldable mixture is extruded into any object other than a sheet, it may be necessary to "open up" the object into a sheet, such as continuously cutting a pipe to form a sheet. If another shape is extruded, other procedures (such as the use of additional rolling processes) may need to be employed. However, the same principles described herein would apply to other extruded shapes. Each of these manufacturing steps is set forth more fully hereinbelow.

A. Preparing The Moldable Mixture.

The first step in the manufacture of sheets involves the formation of a suitable moldable inorganically filled mixture having the desired properties workability and green strength, as well as strength, flexibility, toughness, and degradability of the final hardened product. Using a micro-structural engineering approach, one skilled in the art can select the components, as well as their relative concentrations, in order to obtain a moldable mixture having the desired properties.

Some of the properties considered to be generally desirable with regard to the moldable mixture are adequate workability, plastic-like qualities, and green strength for a given extrusion, rolling, and/or molding process. As set forth above, the level of water, water-dispersible organic polymer binder, and (optionally) dispersant will determine the level of workability and extrudability of the mixture, as will the other components within the mixture, such as aggregates, fibers, air entraining agents, etc. However, no one component will completely determine the rheology and other properties of the moldable mixture. Rather, each of the components work together in an interrelated fashion.

1. Effect of Component on Mixture Rheology

The amount of water that should be added to obtain a mixture having adequate workability and flowability will depend on the concentration and particle packing density of the inorganic filler, the amount of fibers, the identity and quantity of the organic binder, and the identity and quantity of other admixtures (such as dispersants, plasticizers, or lubricants). In general, however, the addition of more water will decrease the viscosity and yield stress of the mixture, thereby increasing the flowability of the mixture and decreasing the form stability of an object molded therefrom.

The water-dispersible organic polymer binder can greatly affect the rheology of the mixture depending on the identity, concentration, and extent of gelation of the organic binder. As set forth above, preferred organic polymer binders can roughly be divided into the following categories: cellulose-based, starch-based, protein-based, polysaccharide-based, and synthetic organic. Within each of these broader categories are numerous subcategories and divisions. A unifying feature of each of these materials is that they will generally dissolve in, or at least be fairly thoroughly dispersed by, water. Hence, they require adequate levels of water for their dispersion and activation (including gelation) within the moldable mixture.

Nevertheless, the organic polymer binders have greatly varying levels of water solubility or dispersability, as well as varying levels of viscosity and yield stress. Organic polymers within the same class may have greatly varying viscosities depending on the molecular weight. For example, a 2% solution of Tylose® FL 15002 at 20° C. has a viscosity of about 15000 cps, while a similar solution of Tylose® 4000 has a viscosity of about 4000 cps. The former greatly increases the yield stress and plastic-like properties of a moldable mixture, while the latter may act more as a lubricant or plasticizer.

Other organic polymers react at different rates and different temperatures within the water. Although many organic polymer binders such as Tylose® neither polymerize or depolymerize when added to the moldable mixture, but rather gelate and then dry out to form a bonding matrix, it is within the scope of the present invention to add water soluble or water-dispersible polymerizable units to the moldable mixture which will thereafter polymerize in situ over time. The rate of the polymerization reaction can be regulated by adjusting the temperature of the mixture and/or adding a catalyst or inhibitor. Examples of polymerizable units which may be added to a moldable mixture include Cellosolve and latex forming monomers.

With regard to gelation, most cellulose-based polymers (such as Tylose®) will readily gelate in water at room temperature. Others such as many starches will only gelate in water at higher temperatures. Certain modified starches can, however, gelate at room temperature. Hence, cellulose-based and modified starch-based polymer binders are advantageous in that a moldable mixture can be formed therefrom at room temperature. Nevertheless, they are generally significantly more expensive than typical starch-based polymers which must be heated to gelate. A preferred starch-based polymer is National 51-6912, which may be purchased from National Starch.

Depending on the desired rheology of the moldable mixture, including where it is desired to affect the viscosity or yield stress as a function of time or temperature, it may be preferable to add a number of different organic polymer binders to the moldable mixture. Cellulose-based organic polymer binders will generally impart their maximum rheological effect almost immediately, while polymerizable binders will stiffen over time and starch-based binders will stiffen as the temperature of the mixture is increased.

Other admixtures which may be added to directly influence the rheology of the moldable mixture include dispersants, plasticizers, and lubricants. Dispersants such as sulfonyl-based materials greatly decrease the viscosity and increase the workability of the moldable mixture while keeping the amount of water constant. A corollary is that using a dispersant allows for the inclusion of less water while maintaining the same level of workability. A preferred plasticizer and lubricant is polyethylene glycol.

The amount, identity, and particle packing density of the inorganic aggregate filler can greatly affect the rheology and workability of the moldable mixture. Inorganic aggregates which are porous or which have a high specific surface area will tend to absorb more water than nonporous aggregates, thereby reducing the amount of water available to lubricate the particles. This results in a stiffer, more viscous mixture. Particle packing density can also have a tremendous impact on the rheology of the mixture by determining the amount of interstitial space which generally must be filled by water, lubricants, organic polymers, or other liquids in order for the mixture to flow.

By way of example, an aggregate system having a packing density of 0.65 will generally require about 35% liquids (including water) by volume in order to substantially fill the interstitial space between the particles. On the other hand, an aggregate system having a packing density of 0.95 will generally require only about 5% liquids by volume in order to substantially fill the voids. This represents a seven-fold decrease in the amount of water required to fill the interstitial space, which directly correlates to the rheological properties, including the level of workability, of the mixture. The actual particle packing density will generally range somewhere between these two extremes and should be calculated when determining how much water to add to the moldable mixture. The size and morphology of the aggregate particles can also affect the rheology and flow properties of the moldable mixture to some degree.

In situations where the moldable mixture will be subjected to high pressures, such as extrusion or other high pressure molding processes, it may be possible to take advantage of the interplay between the principles of particle packing and water deficiency in order to temporarily increase the workability and flowability while compressing the mixture. For purposes of this specification and the appended claims, the terms "water deficiency" or "deficiency of water" shall refer to a moldable mixture in which there is insufficient water (and other liquids) to fully occupy the interstitial space between the particles. Because of this, there is insufficient water to adequately lubricate the particles.

Nevertheless, upon applying a pressure that is great enough to temporarily increase the particle packing density, the amount of interstitial space between the particles will decrease. Because water is incompressible and maintains the same volume under pressure, the increased pressure increases the apparent amount of water that is available to lubricate the particles, thereby increasing the workability and flowability of the mixture. After the pressure is removed, usually after the molding process had ended, the aggregate particles will tend to return to their pre-compression density, thereby increasing the amount of interstitial space and creating an internal pressure. This results in an almost immediate increase in form stability and green strength.

Hydraulically settable inorganic aggregates such as hydraulic cement, gypsum hemihydrate, and calcium oxide can be utilized as a water absorption mechanism. These chemically react with the water, thereby reducing the effective level of water within the moldable mixture without resorting to heating or drying techniques. Such materials can greatly affect the rheology of the moldable mixtures as a function of the extent of hydration, which is a function of time. In addition, it has been found that hydraulic cement increases the cohesive strength of the green moldable mixture and a fresh sheet made therefrom. It is the cohesion that holds the inorganically filled material together so that the

sheet can be pulled through the rollers and yet maintain its form until it has dried sufficiently to obtain sufficient strength.

Finally, other solid components within the mixture such as fibers will affect the rheology of the mixture in similar fashion to the inorganic aggregates. Certain fibers may absorb water depending on their porosity and swelling capability. In addition, certain fibers can be treated to become ionically charged, which will allow them to chemically interact with ionically charged organic plasticizers, such as ionic starches. In this way the fibers may affect the rheology of the mixture to some degree.

2. Effect of Components on Final Properties

With regard to the final dried or hardened product, some of the properties considered generally desirable to design into the structural matrix of the sheet include high tensile strength (in general or along particular vectors), flexural strength, flexibility, and ability to elongate, deflect or bend. In some cases, it may be desirable to obtain sheet which substantially incorporate the properties of conventional paper or paperboard products. However, in other cases it may be desirable to obtain a structural matrix having properties not obtainable using ordinary wood pulp or other conventional paper-making starting materials. These may include increased toughness, higher modulus, water resistance, or lower bulk density.

In contrast to conventional paper or paperboard, in which the properties of the sheets are extremely dependent on the properties of the pulps used, the properties of the inorganically filled sheets of the present invention are substantially independent of the properties of the fibers used in making the sheets. To be sure, using longer, more flexible fibers will impart more flexibility to the sheet than shorter, stiffer fibers. However, properties that are largely pulp-dependent in conventional papers can be designed into the inorganically filled sheet by adjusting the concentrations of the nonfibrous components of the moldable mixture as well as the processing technique used. Such properties as stiffness, rigidity, surface finish, porosity, and the like are generally not dependent on the type of fibers used in the inorganically filled sheets.

The flexibility, tensile strength, flexural strength, or modulus can be tailored to the particular performance criteria of the sheet, container, or other object made therefrom by altering the components and relative concentrations of the components within the moldable mixture. In some cases, higher tensile strength may be an important feature. In others, it may be less significant. Some sheets should preferably be more flexible, while others will be stiff. Some will be relatively dense, others will be thicker, lighter, and more insulative. The important thing is to achieve a material which has properties appropriate for a particular use, while remaining cognizant of cost and other practical production line parameters. While having "too much" or "too little" of a particular property may be inconsequential from the standpoint of performance, from a cost standpoint it may be wasteful or inefficient to provide for the particular property.

In general, increasing the amount of organic polymer binder will increase the tensile and flexural strength of the final hardened sheet, while also greatly increasing the flexibility and resilience of the sheet. Adding more organic polymer also decreases the stiffness of the sheet. Similarly, increasing the concentration of fibers within the mixture also increases the tensile strength of the final sheet, particularly higher tensile strength fibers, such as ceramic fibers,

although such fibers are stiff and will yield a relatively stiff hardened sheet. Conversely, adding flexible fibers, such as natural cellulosic fibers, will greatly increase the flexibility, as well as the tensile, tear, and burst strengths of the sheet.

Different fibers have greatly varying degrees of tear and burst strength, flexibility, tensile strength, ability to elongate without breaking, and stiffness. In order to obtain the advantageous properties of different types of fibers it may be preferable in some cases to combine two or more different kinds of fibers within the moldable mixture.

It should also be understood that certain sheet forming processes, such as extrusion and rolling will tend to orient the fibers in the direction of elongation of the mixture or sheet. This may be advantageous in order to maximize the tensile strength of the sheet in a certain direction. For example, where the sheet will be required to bend along a hinge, it is preferable for the fibers to be oriented in a way so as to more effectively bridge the two sides of the hinge or bend by being oriented perpendicular to the fold line. It may be desirable to concentrate more of the fibers in the area of a hinge or where the sheet requires increased toughness and strength.

The type of aggregate can also affect the properties of the final hardened sheet. Aggregates comprising generally hard, inflexible, small particles such as clay, kaolin, or chalk, will generally result in a smoother sheet having an increased brittleness. Lightweight aggregates such as perlite or hollow glass spheres results in a sheet having lower density, lower brittleness, and greater insulating ability. Aggregates such as crushed sand, silica, gypsum, or clay are extremely inexpensive and can greatly reduce the cost of manufacturing a sheet therefrom. Any material with a high specific surface area gives increased drying shrinkage and shrinkage defects. Materials with lower specific surface areas are advantageous because they are less sticky, which allows the sheet to be processed by lower temperature rollers without sticking.

Hydraulically settable aggregates such as hydraulic cement, gypsum hemihydrate, and calcium oxide may provide small to significant degrees of binding within the hardened sheet depending on the amount in which such 40 hydraulically settable aggregates are added. These may increase the stiffness and compressive strength of the final sheet and, to some degree, the tensile strength. Hydraulic cement can also decrease the solubility of the sheet in water, thereby increasing the resistance of the sheet to water degradation.

Finally, other admixtures within the moldable mixtures can add a waterproofing property to the final product, such as by adding rosin and alum to the mixture. These interact to form a very water resistant component within the inorganically filled matrix. In the absence of significant quantities of such waterproofing agents, water can be used to remoisten the sheet and temporarily increase the flexibility, bendability, and elongation before rupture of the sheet, particularly where the sheet will be formed into another article of manufacture, such as a container. Of course, water can also facilitate the degradation of the sheet after it has been discarded. Water resistance can be introduced by treating the sheet surface with a 5-10% w/w starch solution in order to seal the surface porosity.

As a general rule, inorganically filled sheets which have lower concentrations of organic polymer binder and fiber will be more rigid, have a higher insulation ability, have lower cohesiveness, resist heat damage, have lower tensile strength, and resist water degradation (particularly as they contain more hydraulic cement, the inclusion of which can also increase the compressive strength of the final product).

Sheets which have lower concentrations of organic binder but higher fiber content will have higher tensile strength, have higher toughness, have lower compressive and flexural strengths, have lower stiffness and higher flexibility, and be fairly resistant to water degradation (particularly as the amount of hydraulic cement is increased).

Inorganically filled sheets which have higher concentrations of organic polymer binder and lower concentrations of fiber will be more water soluble and degradable, easier to mold (allowing for the manufacture of thinner sheets), have moderately high compressive and tensile strengths, higher toughness, moderate flexibility, and lower stiffness.

Finally, inorganically filled sheets which have higher concentrations of organic polymer binder and fiber will have properties that are most similar to conventional paper, will have higher tensile strength, toughness, and folding endurance, have moderately high compressive strength, have very low resistance to water degradation, will have lower resistance to heat (particularly those approaching ignition point of fibers or decomposition temperature of the binder), and have higher flexibility and lower stiffness.

The highly inorganically filled sheets formed using the compositions described herein will preferably have a tensile strength in the range from about 0.05 MPa to about 70 MPa, and more preferably in the range from about 5 MPa to about 40 MPa. In addition, the sheets will preferably have a bulk density in the range from about 0.6 g/cm³ to about 2 g/cm³. Whether a sheet will have a density at the lower, intermediate, or higher end of this range will generally depend on the desired performance criteria for a given usage. In light of the foregoing, the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention will preferably have a tensile strength to bulk density ratio in the range from about 2 MPa-cm³/g to about 200 MPa-cm³/g, and more preferably in the range from about 3 MPa-cm³/g to about 50 MPa-cm³/g.

The direction-specific strength properties of the highly inorganically filled sheets of the present invention should be contrasted with those of paper, which is known to have a strong and weak direction with regard to tensile and tearing strength. The strong direction in conventional paper is the machine direction, while the weak direction is the cross-machine direction. While the ratio of the strengths in the strong and weak direction is about 3:1 in conventional paper, in the present invention it is about 2:1, and can approach about 1:1 depending on the particular forming process used. In general, decreasing the differential forming speed tends to allow the fibers to remain in a more random orientation.

The term "elongate" as used in the specification and appended claims with regard to the highly inorganically filled sheet means that the structural matrix of the sheet is capable of being stretched without rupturing and still have a finished surface. In other words, the inorganically filled structural matrix of the sheet is capable of moving or changing shape without rupture by application of a force such as pulling or stretching. The ability of the structural matrix of the sheet to elongate before rupture is measured by an Instron tensile test and a stress strain test.

By optimizing the mix design, it is possible to manufacture a sheet which has a structural matrix capable of elongating up to about 20% in the fresh sheet before tearing or rupturing occurs and from about 0.5% to 8% in the dry sheet. This is usually accomplished by optimizing the amounts of fiber and organic binder within the moldable mixture and resulting matrix. Producing a sheet which has a structural matrix capable of elongating within the specified range can

be accomplished by including fibers within the moldable mixture such that the final hardened sheet will contain fibers in an amount of up to about 50% by volume. The greater the amount of fibers or organic binder added, or the better the matrix to fiber interface, the more elongation that can generally be achieved without rupture of the sheet. In addition, the elongation of a dry sheet can be increased by adding steam or moisture to the sheet in the order of up to 10% weight of the dry weight of the sheet. However, this remoistening temporarily reduces the strength of the sheet until it has been dried out again.

It should be understood that higher tensile strength, as well as greater elongation, will generally be obtained by increasing the amount of fibers within the inorganically filled matrix. This can be accomplished by adding more fibers to the moldable mixture or, alternatively, by attaching a layer of fibers (such as a sheet of paper) on the surface or within the interior of a highly inorganically filled sheet, or by combining fibers having varying properties of strength and flexibility.

The term "deflect" as used in the specification and appended claims with regard to the inorganically filled sheet means that the sheet has a structural matrix capable of bending and rolling without rupture and change in the finished surface. The ability of the sheet to deflect is measured by measuring the elasticity modulus and the fracture energy of the sheet using means known in the art. As with any material, the bending ability of a sheet manufactured according to the present invention is largely dependent upon the thickness of the sheet.

One way to measure deflection without regard to sheet thickness is to define deflection as the relative elongation of one side of the sheet compared to the other side of the sheet. As a sheet is rolled or bent around an axis, the length of the outer side of the sheet will elongate, while the inner side of sheet generally will not. Consequently, a thinner sheet can be bent a far greater degree even though the relative elongation of the outer side compared to the elongation of the inner side is about the same as in a thicker sheet which cannot bend nearly as far.

This ability of the sheet to deflect is related to the sheet's ability to be elastic, which is measured by Young's modulus; consequently, the optimal mix designs for achieving the desired deflection range can be optimized independently of elongation. Nevertheless, during the process of forming the sheet into an appropriate container or other object the bendability of the sheet can be temporarily increased by remoistening the sheet. The water is believed to be absorbed by the fibers, water-dispersible organic binder, and the interstices between the aggregate particles. Upon drying the formed sheet, the level of bendability will generally decrease while the toughness and hardness of the sheet will generally increase.

In order to obtain a sheet having the desired properties of strength, bendability, insulation, toughness, weight, or other performance criteria, the thickness of the sheet can be altered by adjusting the space between the rollers, as set forth more fully below. Depending on the thickness and desired performance criteria, the components and their relative concentrations can be adjusted in order to accommodate a particular sheet thickness. The sheets of the present invention may be designed to have greatly varying thicknesses; however, most products requiring a thin-walled material will generally have a thickness in the range from about 0.01 mm to about 3 mm. Nevertheless, in applications where insulation ability or higher strength or stiffness is more important, the sheet thickness may range up to about 1 cm.

The preferred thickness of the sheets of the present invention will vary depending on the intended use of the inorganically filled sheet, container, or object made therefrom. As a matter of example only, where high deflectability is desired, a thinner sheet will generally be preferred. Conversely, where strength, durability, and/or insulation and deflectionability are the overriding concerns, a thicker sheet will generally be preferred. Nevertheless, where it is desired to bend the sheets along a score, or at least roll them into containers, the inorganically filled sheets will preferably have a thickness in the range from about 0.05 mm to about 2 mm or more, and more preferably in the range from about 0.15 mm to about 1 mm.

Where a sheet is to be used to print magazines or other reading material it will have a thickness that is comparable to conventional paper products, which typically have a thickness of about 0.05 mm. Printable sheets requiring greater flexibility and lower stiffness (such as regular pages of a magazine or brochure) will typically have a thickness of about 0.025-0.075 mm. Those requiring greater strength, stiffness, and lower flexibility (such as magazine or brochure covers) will have a thickness of about 0.1-2 mm. The thickness and flexibility of any particular sheet will depend on the desired performance criteria of the reading or other printed material in question.

Another aspect of the present invention is the ability of the extruded and rolled material to have high green strength. This is achieved by adjusting the quantity and/or identity of the water-dispersible organic binder that is added to the moldable mixture, as well as the amount of the water. Although adding a relatively low amount of water initially will greatly increase the green strength of the molded material, it is possible and often desirable to include a higher amount of water initially because it will increase the workability and the ability of certain molding processes described herein of quickly removing excess water through the application of heat.

As discussed more fully below, the moldable mixture is usually passed through a series of heated rollers which drive off a significant amount of water and aid in molding a sheet with high green strength. Nevertheless, one skilled in the art may adjust the water content so that the moldable mixture has an appropriate rheology so that it will be easily and effectively extruded through a particular die, and yet have sufficient form stability such that the integrity of the sheet is maintained as it is passed through a series of rollers during other processes.

As previously discussed, the moldable mixture is microstructurally engineered to have certain desired properties, both as to the mixture itself, as well as the final hardened product. Consequently, it is important to accurately meter the amount of material that is added during any batch or continuous admixing of the components.

The currently preferred embodiment for preparing an appropriate moldable mixture in an industrial setting is equipment in which the materials incorporated into the moldable mixture are automatically and continuously metered, mixed (or kneaded), de-aired, and extruded by an auger extruder apparatus. It is also possible to premix some of the components in a vessel, as needed, and pump the premixed components into a kneading mixing apparatus.

A double shaft sigma blade kneading mixer with an auger for extrusion is the preferred type of mixer. The mixer may be adjusted to have different RPMs and, therefore, different shear for different components. Typically, the moldable mixtures will be mixed for a maximum of about 10 minutes,

and thereafter emptied from the mixer by extrusion for a maximum of about 3 minutes.

The various component materials that will be combined within the moldable mixtures of the present invention are readily available and may be purchased inexpensively in bulk quantities. They may be shipped and stored in bags, bins, or train cars, and later moved or unloaded using conventional means known in the art. In addition, the materials can be stored in large storage silos and then withdrawn and transported by means of conveyors or the mixing site.

In certain circumstances it may be desirable to mix some of the components together in a high shear mixture in order to form a more well dispersed, homogeneous mixture. For example, certain fibers may require such mixing in order to fully disagglomerate or break apart from each other. High shear mixing results in a more uniformly dispersed mixture, which improves the consistency of the unhardened moldable mixture as well as increasing the strength of the final hardened sheet. This is because high shear mixing more uniformly disperses the fiber, aggregate particles, and binder throughout the mixture, thereby creating a more homogeneous structural matrix within the hardened sheets.

Different mixers are capable of imparting differing shear to the moldable mixer. For example, a kneader imparts higher shear compared to a normal cement mixer, but is low compared to an Eirich Intensive Mixer or a twin auger food extruder.

It should be understood however, that high shear, high speed mixing should not be used with materials that have a tendency to break down or disintegrate under such conditions. Certain lightweight aggregates, such as perlite or hollow glass spheres, will have a tendency to shatter or crush under high shear conditions. In addition, high shear mixing by propeller is generally efficacious only where the mixture has relatively low viscosity. In those cases where it is desirable to obtain a more cohesive, plastic-like mixture, it may be desirable to blend some of the ingredients, including water, in the high shear mixer and thereafter increase the concentration of solids, such as fibers or aggregates, using a lower shear kneading mixer.

As stated above, high shear mixing is especially useful where it is desired to incorporate small, nonagglomerated air voids by adding an air entraining agent within the moldable mixture. In those cases, where a hydraulically settable material, such as hydraulic cement or calcium oxide has been added to the mixture, it may be advantageous to flood the atmosphere above the high shear mixer with carbon dioxide in order to cause the carbon dioxide to react with the mixture. It has been found that carbon dioxide can increase the foam stability of a cementitious mixture and cause an early false setting of hydraulic cement. It is also the constituent which reacts with calcium oxide in order to create calcium carbonate as an insoluble binding precipitate.

High shear mixers useful in creating the more homogeneous mixtures as described herein are disclosed and claimed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,225,247 entitled "Mixing and Agitating Device"; U.S. Pat. No. 4,552,463 entitled "Method and Apparatus for Producing a Colloidal Mixture"; U.S. Pat. No. 4,889,428 entitled "Rotary Mill"; U.S. Pat. No. 4,944,595 entitled "Apparatus for Producing Cement Building Materials"; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,061,319 entitled "Process for Producing Cement Building Material". For purposes of disclosure, the foregoing patents are incorporated herein by specific reference. High shear mixers within the scope of these patents are available from E. Khashoggi Industries of Santa Barbara, Calif., the assignee of the present invention.

B. Forming Sheets from the Moldable Mixture.

Once the moldable mixture has been properly blended, it is then transported to the sheet forming apparatus, which will typically comprise an extruder and/or a set or series of rollers. In some cases an apparatus capable of both mixing and extruding the moldable mixture may be used in order to streamline the operation and minimize the coordination of the various components within the system. Reference is now made to FIG. 1A, which illustrates a currently preferred system for manufacturing sheets from a moldable mixture. The system includes a mixing apparatus 10, an extruder 20, reduction rollers 40, drying rollers 50, optional compaction rollers 60, second drying rollers 70 (optional), optional finishing rollers 80, and optional spooler 90.

15 In the first currently preferred sheet forming step, the moldable mixture can be formed into sheets of precise thickness by first extruding the material through an appropriate extruder die and then passing the extruded material through at least one pair of reduction rollers (FIG. 1A).

20 FIG. 2 is a closeup view of an auger extruder 20, which includes a feeder 22 that feeds the moldable mixture into a first interior chamber 24 within the extruder 20. Within the first interior chamber 24 is a first auger screw 26 which exerts forward pressure on and advances the moldable mixture through the first interior chamber 24 toward an evacuation chamber 28. Typically, a negative pressure or vacuum will be applied to the evacuation chamber 28 in order to remove unwanted air voids within the moldable mixture.

25 Thereafter, the moldable mixture will be fed into a second interior chamber 30. A second auger screw 32 will advance the mixture toward a die head 34 having a transverse slit 36 with a die width 38 and a die thickness 39. The cross-sectional shape of the die slit 36 is configured to create a sheet of a desired width and thickness that will generally correspond to the die width 38 and die thickness 39.

30 Alternatively, as seen in FIG. 3, the extruder may comprise a piston extruder 20' instead of an auger extruder 20. A piston extruder utilizes a piston 22' instead of an auger screw 22 in order to exert forward pressure on and advance the moldable mixture through the interior chamber 24'. An advantage of using a piston extruder is the ability to exert much greater pressures upon the moldable mixture. Nevertheless, due to the highly plastic-like nature of mixtures typically employed in the present invention, it is not generally necessary, or even advantageous, to exert pressures greater than those achieved using an auger extruder.

35 In contrast, an important advantage of using an auger extruder is that it allows for a continuous extrusion process, whereas a piston extruder will generally be useful for extruding in batches. In addition, an auger extruder has the ability to remove unwanted macroscopic air voids within the moldable mixture. Failure to remove unwanted air voids can result in the sheet having a defective or nonhomogeneous structural matrix. During subsequent drying steps, particularly where relatively high heat is used, unwanted air pockets can greatly expand and cause air bubble defects.

40 Removal of the air voids may be accomplished using conventional venting means known in the extrusion art as shown in FIG. 2, wherein the mixture is first passed into an evacuation chamber 28 by a first auger screw 26, and then extruded through the extruder die head 34 by means of a second auger screw 32.

45 Although the preferred width and thickness of the die will depend upon the width and thickness of the particular sheet to be manufactured, the thickness of the extruded sheet will

usually be at least twice, and sometimes many times, the thickness of the final rolled sheet. The amount of reduction (and, correspondingly, the thickness multiplier) will depend upon the properties of the sheet in question. Because the reduction process helps control fiber orientation, the amount of reduction will often correspond to the degree of desired orientation. In addition, the greater the thickness reduction, the greater the elongation of the sheet. In a typical manufacturing process an extruded sheet with a thickness of about 6 mm may be rolled into a sheet with a thickness between about 0.2 mm and about 0.5 mm. (Because this is a 12 to 30 fold decrease in thickness, the sheet should correspondingly elongate 12 to 30 times its original length after extrusion.)

It will be appreciated that where the differential between the roller nip and the sheet thickness before the sheet passes between the reduction rollers is small, the fiber orienting flow of material will tend to be localized at or near the sheet surface, with the interior not being subjected to fiber orienting flow. This allows for the production of sheets that have significant unidirectional or bidirectional orientation of fibers at or near the surface of the sheet and more random orientation of fibers within the interior of the sheet. However, by decreasing the nip relative to the initial sheet thickness it is possible to increase the orientation of the fibers within the interior of the sheet by increasing the fiber orienting flow of material within the sheet interior.

Although the die slit is generally rectangularly shaped, it may contain areas of increased thickness along its width (FIG. 4) in order to form an extruded sheet having varying thickness along its width. In this case, if rollers are used in conjunction with the extrusion process they will preferably have recesses or gap variations which correspond to the areas of increased thickness within the extruded sheet (FIG. 5). In this way a sheet having reinforced areas of increased strength and stiffness can be produced.

In an alternative embodiment, it is envisioned that the width of the die slit can be selectively varied as a function of time as the mixture is extruded through the slit. This permits the extrusion of a sheet having varying thickness along the length of the sheet. In this scenario, it will generally be necessary to provide rollers which also have varying gap distances as a function of time. However, because of the greater difficulty of perfectly synchronizing the rollers to accommodate the rate of extrusion of sheets of varying thickness, this option is less preferable than creating a sheet with varying thickness along the width as described above.

In addition to narrow die slits to form flat sheets, other dies may be used to form other objects or shapes. The only criterion being that the extruded shape be capable of being thereafter formed into a sheet. For example, in some cases it may not be desirable to extrude an extremely wide sheet. Instead, a pipe may be extruded and continuously cut and unfolded using a knife located just outside the die head.

The amount of pressure that is applied in order to extrude the moldable mixture will generally depend on the pressure needed to force the mixture through the die head, as well as the desired rate of extrusion. It should be understood that the rate of extrusion must be carefully controlled in order for the rate of sheet formation to correspond to the speed at which the sheet is subsequently passed through the rollers during the rolling step. If the rate of extrusion is too high, excess inorganically filled material will tend to build up behind the rollers, which will eventually cause a clogging of the system. Conversely, if the rate of extrusion is too low, the rollers will tend to stretch the extruded sheet, which can result in a

fractured or uneven structural matrix, or worse, breakage or tearing of the sheet. The latter can also result in a complete breakdown of the continuous sheet forming process.

It will be understood that an important factor which determines the optimum speed or rate of extrusion is the final thickness of the sheet. A thicker sheet contains more material and will require a higher rate of extrusion to provide the necessary material. Conversely, a thinner sheet contains less material and will require a lower rate of extrusion in order to provide the necessary material.

The ability of the moldable mixture to be extruded through a die head, as well as the rate at which it is extruded, is generally a function of the rheology of the mixture, as well as the operating parameters and properties of the machinery. Factors such as the amount of water, water-dispersible organic binder, dispersant, the perlite packing density, or the level of water absorption by the mixture components all affect the rheological properties of the mixture.

Because it will sometimes not be possible to control all of the variables that can affect the rate of extrusion, it may be preferable to have an integrated system of transducers which measure the rate of extrusion, or which can detect any buildup of excess material behind the rollers. This information can then be fed into a computer processor which can then send signals to the extruder in order to adjust the pressure and rate of extrusion in order to fine tune the overall system. As set forth below, a properly integrated system will also be capable of monitoring and adjusting the roller speed as well.

As set forth above, adequate pressure is necessary in order to temporarily increase the workability of the moldable mixture in the case where the mixture has a deficiency of water and has a degree of particle packing optimization. In a mixture that is water deficient, the spaces (or interstices) between the particles contain insufficient water to lubricate the particles in order to create adequate workability under ordinary conditions. However, as the mixture is compressed within the extruder, the compressive forces drive the particles together, thereby reducing the interstitial space between the particles and increasing the apparent amount of water that is available to lubricate the particles. In this way, workability is increased until the mixture has been extruded through the die head, at which point the reduced pressure causes the mixture to exhibit an almost immediate increase in stiffness and green strength, which is generally desirable.

It should be understood that the pressure exerted on the moldable mixture during the extrusion process should not be so great so as to crush or fracture the lightweight, lower strength aggregates (such as perlite, hollow glass spheres, pumice, or exfoliated rock). Crushing or otherwise destroying the structural integrity of these or similar lightweight aggregates containing a large amount of voids will decrease their insulating effect by eliminating the voids. Nevertheless, because perlite, exfoliated rock, or other such materials are relatively inexpensive, some level of crushing or fracturing of the aggregate particles is acceptable. However, at some point excess pressure will eliminate the lightweight and/or insulative effect of the lightweight aggregate, at which point it would be more economical to simply include a less expensive aggregate such as sand.

In light of each of the factors listed above, the amount of pressure which will be applied by the extruder in order to extrude the moldable mixture will preferably be in the range from about 50 kPa to about 70 MPa, more preferably in the range from about 150 kPa to about 30 MPa, and most preferably in the range from about 350 kPa to about 3.5 MPa.

In some cases, particularly where a lower density, higher insulating sheet is desired, it may be advantageous to employ a blowing agent within the moldable mixture, which is added to the mixture prior to the extrusion process.

It will be understood that the extrusion of the moldable mixture through the die head will tend to unidirectionally orient the individual fibers within the moldable mixture along the "Y" axis, or in the lengthwise direction of the extruded sheet. As will be seen herein below, the rolling process will further orient the fibers in the "Y" direction as the sheet is further elongated during the reduction process. In addition, by employing rollers having varying gap distances in the "Z" direction (such as conical rollers) some of the fibers can also be oriented in the "X" direction, i.e., along the width of the sheet. Thus, it is possible to create a sheet by extrusion, coupled with rolling, which will have bidirectionally oriented fibers.

In addition to the use of traditional extrusion methods, such as those set forth above, it may be preferable in some cases to either extrude individual mixture masses, which are conveyed to a hopper situated immediately above two horizontally oriented extruding rollers, or simply convey the moldable mixture to the hopper. This eliminates the need to initially extrude the moldable mixture into a sheet before the rolling process. One conveyor method is an auger conveyor, which allows for variations in feed pressure of the moldable mixture through the rollers.

Reference should be made to FIG. 1B, which illustrates an alternative preferred embodiment in which the moldable mixture is conveyed directly from the mixer 10 to a pair of extruder reduction rollers 40, which converts the amorphous moldable mixture directly into a sheet without the use of an extruder die. As in the other system illustrated in FIG. 1A and described above, the sheet formed by the rollers 40 is fed through a series of drying rollers 50, optional compaction rollers 60, optional second drying rollers 70, optional finishing rollers 80, and then wound onto optional spooler 90.

C. The Rolling Process.

In most embodiments of the present invention, it will be preferable to "roll" the extruded sheet by passing it between at least one pair of rollers, the purpose of which is to improve the uniformity and surface quality of the sheet. In some embodiments, the rolling step will only reduce the thickness of the sheet by a small amount, if at all. In other cases, it will substantially reduce the thickness of the sheet, particularly where the moldable mixture is fed directly between the rollers without first extruding the mixture into the form of a sheet. In cases where it is desirable to greatly reduce the thickness of the highly inorganically filled sheet, it will often be necessary to reduce the thickness of the sheet in steps, wherein the sheet is passed through several pairs of rollers each pair having progressively narrower gap distances therebetween.

Reference should be made to FIG. 1A which shows one embodiment of the present invention in which a series of three pairs of rollers are employed during the rolling process. The rollers within each of the three roller pairs have similar diameters, although in some cases it may be preferable to use smaller diameter rollers in combination with larger diameter rollers. As seen in FIG. 6, a set or pair of rollers 40 normally includes two individual rollers 42 positioned adjacent to one another with a predetermined gap distance 44 therebetween. The gap distance 44 between the two individual rollers 42 corresponds to the desired thickness 44 of the reduced sheet 46 after it passes between the set of rollers.

As the thickness of the sheet is reduced upon passing through a pair of rollers, it will also elongate in the forward moving (or "Y") direction. One consequence of sheet elongation is that the fibers will further be oriented or lined up in the "Y" direction. In this way, the reduction process in combination with the initial extrusion process will create a sheet having substantially unidirectionally oriented fibers in the "Y", or lengthwise, direction. However, as previously stated, increasing the speed of the rolling process has been found to create a better randomization of fibers throughout the sheet.

Another way to maintain the random orientation of fibers within the sheet is to decrease the differential forming speed of the rollers. That is, where the moldable mixture is fed between the extruding rollers under lower pressures, the sudden increase in machine-direction velocity and accompanying shear as the mixture passes between the rollers will tend to orient the fibers in the machine direction. However, by increasing the pressure of the mixture it is possible to decrease the level of machine-direction shear, thereby resulting in a sheet with a more randomized fiber orientation.

Another consequence of sheet elongation is that the sheet will "speed up" as it passes between a pair of reduction rollers. Reference is again made to FIG. 6 to illustrate that the rotational speed v_r of the rollers will correspond to the speed v_s of the reduced, elongated sheet as it exits the rollers, not the speed of the sheet, as it enters the gap between the rollers. More precisely, the tangential speed of the outer surfaces of the rollers at the point where the radius of the rollers is perpendicular to the surface of the sheet will be substantially equal to the speed of the sheet as it exits the pair of rollers. The consequence of this is that the roller speed will be "faster" relative to the speed of the sheet as it first enters into the rollers.

By way of example, if the sheet thickness is reduced by 50%, and assuming there is no widening of the sheet during the reduction process, the sheet will elongate to twice its original length. This corresponds to a doubling of the sheet's velocity before it enters the rollers compared to when it exits the rollers. Thus, as in FIG. 7, if the sheet thickness is reduced by 50%, then $v_r=2v_s$; the velocity doubles from point "a" to point "b".

The sheet "speeds up" while passing between a pair of rollers by being squeezed or pressed into a thinner sheet by the rotating rollers. This process of squeezing or pressing the sheet, as well as the speed differential between the entering sheet and the rollers, can create varying shearing forces on the sheet. The application of an excessively large shearing force can disrupt the integrity of the structural matrix of the sheet and create flaws within the sheet, thereby weakening the sheet. Nevertheless, it has been found that for mix designs having very low adhesion to the rollers, and which are highly plastic, it may be possible to reduce the extruded sheet to the final thickness in just one step using a pair of relatively large diameter rollers.

The diameter of each of the rollers should be optimized depending on the properties of the moldable mixture and the amount of thickness reduction of the inorganically filled sheets. When optimizing the diameter of the rollers two competing interests should be considered. The first relates to the fact that smaller diameter rollers tend to impart a greater amount of shearing force into the sheet as it passes between the rollers. This is because the downward angle of compression onto the sheet is on average greater than when using a larger diameter roller (FIG. 7).

Reference to FIG. 7 illustrates that not only is the downward angle of compression less severe in a larger diameter

roller, the distance (and by analogy, the time) during which the sheet is being accelerated is greater when using larger diameter rollers. Because it takes longer for the sheet to pass from point "a" to point "b" when using broader rollers, the rate of acceleration is decreased, as are the shearing forces associated with the reduction in sheet thickness. Consequently, from this perspective, larger diameter rollers appear to be advantageous compared to smaller diameter rollers because less shearing forces would be expected to introduce fewer flaws into the inorganically filled structural matrix.

However, the use of larger diameter rollers has the drawback of the inorganically filled material coming into contact with the roller for a greater period of time, thereby resulting in increased drying of the sheet during the rolling process in the case where the rollers are heated to prevent adhesion. Because more of the sheet comes into contact with a larger diameter roller, heating is even more important when using larger diameter rollers to prevent adhesion. While some drying is advantageous, drying the sheet too quickly during the rolling process could result in the introduction of fractures and other flaws within the structural matrix. A drier sheet is less able to conform to a new shape without a rupture in the matrix compared to a wetter sheet subjected to the same level of shearing forces. Consequently, from this perspective the use of smaller diameter rollers is advantageous for reducing the drying effect of the reduction rollers. Nevertheless, some of the drawbacks of using a larger diameter roller can be minimized by using a highly polished roller, lower temperatures, and appropriate mix designs to reduce the stickiness of the moldable mixture. Also, passing the sheet through faster reduces the drying effect of the rollers and causes greater widening of the sheet.

In light of this, the diameter of the rollers should preferably be optimized and be sufficiently small to prevent overdrying of the material during the rolling process, while also being sufficiently large to reduce the amount of shearing force imparted to the sheet, thereby allowing a greater reduction of sheet thickness during each reduction step.

The optimization of the roller diameters in order to achieve the greatest amount of reduction of sheet thickness, while at the same time preventing overdrying of the molded sheet, is preferred in order to reduce the number of reduction steps in a manufacturing process. Besides reducing the number of working parts, reducing the number of reduction steps also eliminates the number of rollers whose speed must be carefully synchronized in order to prevent sheet buildup behind the rollers (in the case of rollers rotating too slow) or sheet tearing (in the case of rollers rotating too fast). Because each of the roller pairs reduces the thickness of the sheet as it passes therebetween, the sheet will speed up each time it passes through a set of rollers. Therefore, each of the roller pairs must independently rotate at the proper speed in order to prevent interruption of the rolling process. Eliminating the number of reduction steps greatly simplifies this synchronization problem.

As set forth above, it is preferable to treat the roller surfaces in order to prevent sticking or adhesion of the inorganically filled sheet to the rollers. One method entails heating the rollers, which causes some of the water within the moldable mixture to evaporate, thereby creating a steam barrier between the sheet and the rollers. Evaporation of some of the water also reduces the amount of water within the moldable mixture, thereby increasing the green strength of the sheet. The temperature of the rollers, however, must not be so high as to dry or harden the surface of the sheet to the point which would create residual stresses, fractures,

flaking, or other deformities or irregularities in the sheet. Accordingly, it is preferable to heat the rollers to a temperature in the range from about 40° C. to about 140° C., more preferably from about 50° C. to about 120° C., and most preferably from about 60° C. to about 85° C.

In addition, the rate of drying of the sheet can be reduced by incorporating aggregates having a low specific surface area. Aggregates which have a greater specific surface area can more readily release any water that is absorbed within the aggregate, or adsorbed onto the surface, compared to aggregates having a lower specific surface area.

Generally, the stickiness of the moldable mixture increases as the amount of water in the mixture is increased. Therefore, the rollers should generally be heated to a higher temperature in cases where the mixture contains more water in order to prevent sticking, which is advantageous because sheet containing a higher water content must generally have more of the water removed in order to obtain adequate green strength.

Because heated rollers can drive off significant amounts of water and improve the form stability, the amount of acceptable sheet thickness reduction will generally decrease in each successive reduction step as the sheet becomes drier. This is because a drier, stiffer sheet can tolerate less shear before flaws are introduced into the structural matrix.

In an alternative embodiment, adhesion between the inorganically filled sheets and rollers can be reduced by cooling the rollers to or below room temperature. Heating the mixture in the extruder to a relatively high temperature, for example, and then cooling the sheet surface causes the vaporizing water to condense, which is thought to create a thin film of water between the sheet and the roller. The rollers should be cool enough to prevent the surface of the sheet from adhering to the rollers, but not so cold to cause the sheet to freeze or become so stiff or inflexible that it will fracture or shatter during the rolling process. Accordingly, it is preferable to cool the rollers to a temperature in the range from about 0° C. to about 40° C., more preferably from about 5° C. to about 35° C., and most preferably from about 10° C. to about 15° C.

In order to obtain the beneficial nonadhesive effects of cooling the rollers, it will generally be necessary to first heat the moldable mixture before or during the extrusion process to a temperature that is significantly higher than the temperature of the cooled rollers. This allows for the beneficial condensation of water vapor from the heated mixture onto the cooled rollers, thereby creating a thin layer of lubricating water between the rollers and the moldable mixture. Accordingly, it will generally be preferable to heat the extruding mixture to a temperature in the range from about 20° C. to about 80° C. The temperature will correlate with the temperature of the rollers.

Another way to reduce the level of adhesion between the rollers and the inorganically filled sheet is to treat the roller surfaces in order to make them less amenable to adhesion. Rollers are typically made from polished stainless steel and coated with a nonstick material such as polished chrome, nickel, or teflon.

It has been discovered that the amount of shear and downward pressure of the rollers can be reduced, while still deriving the same amount of sheet reduction, by employing a shear reduction roller 42 having a slightly conical shape in conjunction with a conventional roller 42 (FIG. 8). However, the degree of gap differential in the "Z" direction as a result of the conical shape should be controlled to prevent spreading or widening of the sheet in the "X"

direction (unless such widening is desired). However, small amounts of widening is not usually desired because the widened portion is not usually of a constant thickness and must typically be trimmed and discarded. By using such conical rollers, it is possible to obtain higher elongation and sheet reduction without applying more shear to the sheet.

Of course, as seen in FIG. 9, it may be desirable to widen or spread the sheet in the "X" direction through the use of a more sharply angled conical roller 42" that creates a gap differential between the rollers along the "X" direction. By varying the gap between the rollers, it is possible to cause the inorganically filled sheet to spread or widen in the "X" direction from the point where the gap is more narrow toward the point where the gap is wider. In addition to conical rollers, it is possible to orient the individual rollers 42 in the "Z" direction in order to provide the rollers with a smaller gap distance at one end than at the other (FIG. 10).

Spreading or widening the sheet in the "X" direction also has the beneficial effect of reorienting some of the fibers in the "X" direction, thereby creating a sheet with bidirectionally oriented fibers (in the "X" and "Y" directions). Orienting the fibers maximizes the tensile strength imparting properties of the fibers in the direction of fiber orientation.

In addition, orienting the fibers is particularly useful in order to reinforce a hinge or score within the sheet. Fibers which are greater in length than the width of the fold or bend can act as a bridge to connect the material on either side of the fold or bend even if the matrix is partially or even substantially fractured along the fold or bend. This bridging effect is enhanced if the fibers are generally aligned perpendicular to the fold or bend.

Finally, it should be understood that due to the plastic nature and relatively high level of workability of the moldable mixture, the rolling process will usually not result in much compression of the sheet. In other words, the density of the sheet will remain substantially constant throughout the rolling process, although some compaction would be expected, particularly where the sheet has been significantly dried while passing between the reduction rollers. Where compaction is desired, the sheet can be passed between a pair of compaction rollers 60 following a drying step, as set forth more fully below.

One of ordinary skill in the art will appreciate that the extrusion step need not formally employ the use of an "extruder" as the term is used in the art. The purpose of the extrusion step is to provide a continuous, well-regulated supply of moldable inorganically filled material to the rollers. This may be achieved by other mechanisms known to those skilled in the art to effect the "extrusion" or flow of material through an appropriate opening. The force needed to cause a moldable mixture to flow may, for example, be supplied by gravity.

As set forth above, it may be advantageous to simply feed the moldable mixture through the rollers as the extrusion process. This reduces the cost of the sheet-forming process while also allowing for the adjustment of the pressure of the mixture being fed between the rollers. Increasing the pressure increases the randomization of the fibers within the final sheet, while decreasing the pressure increases the differential speed and shear in the machine direction, resulting in greater alignment of the fibers in the machine direction.

In summary, it has been found that the important parameters within the rolling process include the diameter, speed, and temperature of the rollers, as well as the "nip height" (or gap therebetween). Increasing the roller speed will generally allow, and may require, a corresponding increase in the

temperature of the rollers in order to prevent adhesion of the sheet to the rollers. Increasing the diameter of the rollers, as well as the nip height, each tend to decrease the shear rate that is imparted by the rollers to the moldable mixture and sheet during the rolling process, while increasing the speed increases the shear rate.

D. The Drying Process.

Although the rolling process often results in partial or even substantial drying of the molded inorganically filled sheet, it will be preferable to further dry the sheet in order to obtain a sheet with the desired properties of tensile strength and toughness. (Of course, the sheet will naturally dry out over time, although it may be unfeasible to wait for the sheet to naturally air dry.) Accelerated drying may be accomplished in a number of ways, each of which involves heating the sheet in order to drive off the excess water. A preferred method of drying the sheet involves the use of large diameter, heated drying rollers sometimes known in the art as "Yankee" rollers, although a series of smaller rollers may also be employed. The main concern is that the combined surface areas of the rollers be adequate to efficiently effectuate drying of the sheet.

In contrast to the reduction rollers, which are generally aligned in pairs of rollers, the drying rollers are individually aligned so that the sheet passes over the surface of each roller individually in sequence. In this way, the two sides of the highly inorganically filled sheet are alternately dried in steps. While the sheet passes between the reduction rollers during the rolling step in a generally linear path, the sheet follows a generally sinusoidal path when wrapping around and through the drying rollers during the drying step.

Referring to FIG. 1A, the side adjacent to the first drying roller is heated by the drying roller while the other side is exposed to the air. The heated sheet loses water in the form of vapor, which can escape out the sides of the roller or the surface of the sheet opposite the roller. The vapor also provides a nonstick barrier between the sheet and roller. The drying rollers can be equipped with tiny holes within the surface in order to allow some of the water vapor to escape through the holes during the drying step.

As the sheet continues on its path it is rolled onto a second drying roller where the other side comes into contact with the roller surface and is dried (FIG. 1A). This process may be continued for as many steps as needed in order to dry the sheet in the desired amount. The amount of drying will depend on a number of factors, including the amount of water within the sheet, the thickness of the sheet, the time that the sheet is in contact with the roller surface, the temperature of the rollers, and the desired properties of the sheet. In some cases it may be preferable to dry one side of the sheet more than the other. This may be accomplished by designing a system which increases the contact of one side of the sheet with the drying rollers relative to the contact of the other side.

The temperature of the drying rollers will depend on a number of factors, including the moisture content of the sheet as it passes over a particular roller. In any event, the temperature of the drying rollers should be less than about 300° C. Although the moldable inorganically filled material should not be heated to above 250° C. in order to prevent the destruction of the organic constituents (such as the organic polymer binder or cellulosic fibers), rollers heated to above this temperature may be used so long as there is adequate water within the mixture to cool the material as the water vaporizes. Nevertheless, as the amount of water decreases during the drying process, the temperature of the rollers should be reduced to prevent overheating of the material.

In some cases, it may be preferable to use a drying tunnel or chamber in conjunction with the drying rollers. In order to obtain the full effect of heat convection drying, it is often preferable to circulate the heated air in order to speed up the drying process. The temperature within the drying tunnel, as well as the residence or dwell time of the sheet within the tunnel, will determine the amount and rate of evaporation of the water within the inorganically filled material.

In order to achieve quick drying of the surface, it may be preferable to more quickly pass the sheet through a very hot drying tunnel. Conversely, in order to achieve a more uniform and deep drying of the sheet, it might be desirable to pass the sheet more slowly through the drying tunnel. However, the drying tunnel should not usually exceed 250° C. in order to prevent the destruction of the cellulose fibers and the organic polymer binder. In light of the foregoing, the drying tunnel will preferably be heated to a temperature in the range from about 50° C. to about 250° C., and more preferably in the range from about 100° C. to about 200° C.

In some cases, the drying process set forth above will be the final step before the sheet is either used to form a container or other object or, alternatively, rolled onto a spool or stacked as sheets until needed. In other cases, particularly where a sheet with a smoother, more paper-like finish is desired, this drying step will be followed by one or more additional steps set forth more fully below, including a compacting step and/or a finishing step.

In the case of compaction, it is generally preferable to leave the sheets with adequate moisture so that the inorganically filled matrix remains in a moldable condition to prevent fracturing of the matrix during the optional compaction step. Otherwise, if the drying step is not followed by a compaction step, it is generally desired to substantially dry out the sheet in order to quickly maximize the tensile strength and toughness of the sheet.

E. Optional Finishing processes.

In many cases, it may be desirable to compact the inorganically filled sheet in order to achieve the final thickness, tolerance, and surface finish. In addition, the compaction process can be used to remove unwanted voids within the structural matrix. Referring to FIG. 11, the sheet may optionally be passed between a pair of compaction rollers 60 after being substantially dried during the drying process. The compaction process generally yields a sheet with higher density and strength, fewer surface defects, and a smaller thickness (FIG. 11), and also fixes and aligns the compacted particles within the sheet surface. The amount of compressive force of the compaction rollers should be adjusted to correspond to the particular properties of the sheet.

The compaction process preferably yields a sheet of reduced thickness and increased density without causing significant elongation of the sheet and without negatively disrupting or weakening the structural matrix. In order to achieve compaction without elongating the sheet and without weakening the structural matrix, it is important to control the drying process so that the sheet contains an appropriate amount of water to maintain a moldable rheology of the sheet. If the sheet contains too much water, the compaction rollers will elongate the sheet in similar fashion as either the extruding or reduction rollers. In fact, the compaction rollers are substantially the same as the extruding or reduction rollers, the only difference being that compaction, rather than elongation, will occur if the sheet is dry enough and the reduction in sheet thickness is less than the total porosity left by the evaporation of the water (i.e., if the evaporation of

water creates an additional porosity of 25% then the roller nip should be at least 75% of the thickness of the precompacted sheet).

On the other hand, overdrying the sheet prior to the compaction step can yield a weaker sheet. At some point the inorganically filled sheet can become so dry and brittle that the inorganically filled matrix is no longer moldable and cannot be compressed without fracturing. The stressing of the structural matrix can diminish the final strength and other beneficial properties of the sheet even if the fractures are microscopic and not visible to the naked eye. The inorganically filled matrix should preferably be just moist enough to allow it to flow or mold out the voids when compacted, but dry enough so that compaction, not elongation, occurs. (Nevertheless, even a completely dry sheet may be compacted in some cases without introducing significant defects by first remoistening the sheet.)

It has been found preferable to compact and dry the sheets in a sequential fashion in order to progressively compact the sheet. This allows for the removal of just enough of the water to allow the sheet to compact, while retaining sufficient water to maintain the moldability of the inorganically filled matrix. Because the compaction process forces the particles into closer proximity, thereby increasing the particle packing density and reducing the porosity within the sheet, there is more water available for lubricating the particles after the compaction step, assuming a constant water content, within the sheet. This allows for the simultaneous or subsequent removal of water from the sheet without a significant reduction in moldability. This in turn makes possible the sequential compaction and removal of water without concomitant damage to the sheet structure.

Because the compaction process (including one or more compaction steps) usually involves a slightly moist sheet, it is usually preferable to further dry the sheet after the compaction step in a manner similar to the drying process outlined above using optional drying rollers 70. This optional drying step may be carried out using drying rollers, a drying tunnel, or a combination of the two. Nevertheless, in some cases the sheet may be further processed without a second drying step, such as where the sheet is immediately used to form a container or other object, is scored, or where it is otherwise advantageous to have a slightly moist sheet.

It may also be preferable to further alter the surface of the inorganically filled sheet bypassing the sheet between one or more pairs of finishing (or "calendering") rollers 80 (FIG. 12). For example, in order to create a sheet with a very smooth surface on one or both sides, the sheet may be passed between a pair of hard and soft rollers. The term "hard roller" refers to a roller 82 having a very polished surface and which leaves the side of the sheet in contact with the hard roller very smooth. The term "soft roller" refers to a roller 84 having a surface capable of creating enough friction between the soft roller 84 and the sheet to pull the sheet through the hard and soft roller pair. This is necessary because the hard roller 82 is usually too slick to pull the dry sheet through a pair of hard rollers. Besides, some slippage of the hard roller 82 is advantageous in order to align the particles within the surface of the sheet. Using a driven, highly polished hard roller in order to "supercalender" the sheet results in a sheet having a very smooth surface finish. The finishing process may be optionally facilitated by spraying water on the sheet surface, and/or by coating the surface with clay, calcium carbonate, or other appropriate coating materials known to one of ordinary skill in the art.

In other embodiments, the finishing rollers can impart a desired texture such as a meshed or checkered surface.

Instead of using a hard and a soft roller, rollers which can imprint the sheets with the desired finish may be used. If desired, the rollers can imprint the surface of the sheet with a logo or other design. Special rollers capable of imparting a water mark can be used alone or in conjunction with any of these other rollers. The extruder rollers, reduction rollers, or compaction rollers may contain means for producing a water mark by either producing a raised or depressed area within a sheet passing therethrough.

Although the finishing or calendering process usually requires some compaction of a sheet that has been dried to the point where the inorganically filled matrix is no longer moldable, the compaction is not so great that it significantly weakens the sheet and is generally localized at the surface of the sheet. The tradeoff between the slight reduction in sheet strength is the vast improvement in surface quality that is brought about by the finishing process.

It may be desired to corrugate the sheets in a manner similar to corrugated cardboard. This is accomplished by passing a semi-moist sheet between a pair of corrugated rollers 86 (FIG. 13). The moisture content of the sheet should be controlled so that the corrugation process does not result in a sheet with a damaged structural matrix. This may typically be carried out using steam in the area around the sheet to be corrugated. If the sheet is too dry, the corrugation process can damage the structural matrix, and in some cases may even result in the tearing or splitting of the sheet. Conversely, if the sheet is too moist, the corrugated sheet may lack the green strength necessary to maintain the corrugated shape.

As in the manufacture of corrugated cardboard sheets suitable for boxes or other uses, it may be preferable to sandwich the corrugated inorganically filled sheet between two flat sheets. This is accomplished using means in the art of making corrugated cardboard. In addition, one or more of the sandwiched sheets may be made of another material such as paper or paperboard. The choice of material depends on a variety of factors, including the desired performance criteria, cost, and intended method of discarding the sheet when it has been completed.

The inorganically filled sheets may alternatively be creped much like conventional paper in order to provide a highly extensible sheet that is capable of absorbing energy at sudden rates of strain. Creped sheets are increasingly important in the production of shipping sacks. Conventional creping is performed either at the wet press section of a paper machine (wet crepe) or on a Yankee dryer (dry crepe). Although the exact parameters of either a wet or dry creping process will differ between the inorganically filled sheets of the present invention and tree paper, one of ordinary skill in the art will recognize how to adjust the creping process in order to obtain creped inorganically filled sheets.

It has been found that the inorganically filled sheets can be treated with strong acids in order to parchment the fibrous surface portion of the sheet matrix. Treating the sheet with, for example, concentrated sulfuric acid causes the cellulosic fibers to swell tremendously and become partially dissolved. In this state, the plasticized fibers close their pores, fill in surrounding voids and achieve more intimate contact between them for more extensive hydrogen bonding. Rinsing with water causes reprecipitation and network consolidation resulting in fibers that are stronger wet than dry, lint free, odor free, taste free, and resistant to grease and oils. By combining parchment's natural tensile toughness with extensibility imparted by wet creping, paper with great shock-absorbing capability can be produced.

In the present invention, it can be seen that the creping process would be expected to work better as the fiber content of the sheets is increased. Increased fiber content facilitates the sealing of the pores and increased hydrogen bonding of the fibers. It should be understood, however, that certain acid sensitive aggregates, such as calcium carbonate, should probably not be used where the sheet is to be parchmented.

F. Coating Processes.

It may be preferable to apply coatings or coating materials to the highly inorganically filled sheets prepared according to the processes set forth above. Coatings can be used to alter the surface characteristics of the sheet in a number of ways, including sealing and protecting the sheet or other object made therefrom. Coatings may provide protection against moisture, base, acid, grease, or organic solvents. They may also provide a smoother, glossier, or scuff-resistant surface and help to prevent fiber "fly away." Coatings can be used to reinforce the wet inorganically filled sheet during the sheet processing stage, or they may strengthen and reinforce a dry sheet, particularly at a bend or fold line. Some coatings can also be utilized as adhesives or to form laminated sheets.

Related to the concept of coating is the "sizing" of the sheets, which essentially refers to the sealing of the pores of the sheets. Sizing can be used to improve the smoothness and water resistance of the inorganically filled sheets. They can either increase or decrease the strength, modulus, and elongation (or extensibility) depending on their composition and amount used. Some sizings or coatings may soften the inorganically filled matrix, thereby resulting in a more flexible sheet. Others may make the sheet more stiff.

Coatings can be applied to the surface of the sheet during the sheet forming process, in which case the process is an "on-machine" process. However, it may be preferable to apply the coating after the sheet forming process, in which case the process is an "off-machine" process.

The object of the coating process is usually to achieve a uniform film with minimum defects on the surface of the sheet. The selection of a particular coating process depends on a number of substrate (i.e., sheet) variables, as well as coating formulation variables. The substrate variables include the strength, wettability, porosity, density, smoothness, and uniformity of the sheet. The coating formulation variables include total solids content, solvent base (including water solubility and volatility), surface tension, and rheology.

Coatings may be applied to the sheets using any coating method known in the art of manufacturing paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, sheet metal, or other packaging materials. Coating processes known in the art that may be used to coat the inorganically filled sheets of the present invention include blade, puddle, air-knife, printing, Dahlgren, gravure, and powder coating. Coatings may also be applied by spraying the sheet or other object made therefrom with any of the coating materials listed below or by dipping the sheet or object into a vat containing an appropriate coating material. Finally, coatings may be coextruded along with the sheet in order to integrate the coating process with the extrusion process. A more detailed description of useful coating processes is set forth in the Andersen-Hodson Technology.

Appropriate organic coating materials include melamine, polyvinyl chloride, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinyl acetate, polyacrylates, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, polyethylene glycol, acrylics, polyurethane, polyethylene, polyactic acid, polyethylene, Biopol® (a polyhydroxybutyrate-hydroxyvalerate copolymer), waxes (such as beeswax or

petroleum based wax), elastomers, polyacrylates, latex, synthetic polymers, including biodegradable polymers, or mixtures thereof. Biopol® is manufactured by Imperial Chemical Industries in the United Kingdom.

Appropriate inorganic coating materials include calcium carbonate, sodium silicate, kaolin, silicon oxide, aluminum oxide, ceramics, and mixtures thereof. These may also be mixed with one or more of the organic coatings set forth above.

In some cases, it may be preferable for the coating to be elastomeric, deformable, or waterproof. Some coatings may also be used to strengthen places where the inorganically filled sheets are more severely bent, such as where the sheet has been scored. In such cases, a pliable, possibly elastomeric, coating may be preferred. Besides these coatings, any appropriate coating material would work depending on the application involved.

If the sheets are used to manufacture containers or other products intended to come into contact with foodstuffs, the coating material will preferably comprise an FDA-approved coating. An example of a particularly useful coating is sodium silicate, which is acid resistant. Resistance to acidity is important, for example, where the container is exposed to foods or drinks having a high acid content, such as soft drinks or juices. Where it is desirable to protect the container from basic substances, the containers can be coated with an appropriate polymer or wax, such as those used to coat paper containers.

G. Scoring and Perforation Processes.

In some cases it may be desirable to alternatively score, score cut, or perforate the sheet in order to define a line upon which the sheet may fold or bend. A score cut can be made by using a knife blade cutter 170 (FIG. 14) mounted on a score press, or it can be accomplished using a continuous die cut roller 172 as shown in FIG. 15. A score may be pressed into the sheet by means of a scoring die 174 as shown in FIG. 16. Finally, a perforation may be made by means of a perforation cutter 178 depicted in FIG. 17.

Where the inorganically filled sheet has a relatively low fiber content (less than 15% by volume of the total solids), it is preferable to score cut rather than score press the sheet. Conversely, where the sheet has a relatively high fiber content (greater than 15% by volume of the total solids), it is preferable to score press rather than score the sheet. Finally, perforations generally work well in sheets of any fiber content.

The purpose of the score, score cut, or perforation is to create a location on the inorganically filled sheet where the sheet can be bent or folded. This creates a "hinge" within the sheet with far greater bendability and resilience than possible with an unscored or unperforated sheet. In some cases multiple score cuts or perforations may be desirable.

Cutting a score line or perforation within the sheet creates a better fold line or hinge for a number of reasons. First, it provides a place where the sheet might more naturally bend or fold. Second, cutting a score makes the sheet at the score line thinner than the rest of the sheet, which reduces the amount of lengthwise elongation of the surface while bending the sheet. The reduction of surface elongation reduces the tendency of the structural matrix to fracture upon being folded or bent (FIG. 18). Third, the score cut or perforation allows for a controlled crack formation within the matrix in the event that fracture of the structural matrix occurs.

It may sometimes be preferable to concentrate more fibers at the place in which the score cut or perforation will be made. This can be accomplished by co-extruding a second

layer of highly inorganically filled material containing a higher fiber content at predetermined timed intervals to correspond with the location of the score cut or perforation. In addition, fibers can be placed on top of, or injected within, the sheet during the extrusion or rolling processes in order to achieve a higher fiber concentration at the desired location.

The inorganically filled sheet will preferably be in a substantially dry or semi-hardened state during the scoring or perforation process. This is desirable to prevent the score or perforation from closing up through the migration of moist material into the score cut. Since scoring generally (and perforation always) involves cutting through a portion of the structural matrix, the sheet can even be totally dry without the scoring or perforation process harming the sheet. However, in cases where a score is pressed rather than cut into the sheet surface, the sheet should be moist enough to prevent fracture due to the dislocation of the structural matrix.

The depth of the score cut will generally depend on the type of score, the thickness of the inorganically filled sheet, and the degree of bending along the score line. The scoring mechanism should be adjusted to provide for a score of the desired depth. Of course, the die tap should not be so large as to actually cut through the sheet or render it too thin to withstand the anticipated forces (unless an easily tearable score is desired). Preferably, the score cut should be just deep enough to adequately serve its purpose. A combination of score cuts on alternated sides of the sheet may be preferred in some cases to increase the range of bending motion.

In most cases where a thinner sheet (<1 mm) is being score cut, the cut will have a depth relative to the thickness of the sheet that is in the range from about 10% to about 50%, more preferably in the range from about 20% to about 35%. In the case of thicker sheets, the score cut will usually be deeper due to the decrease in bendability of the thicker sheet.

It should be understood that the inorganically filled sheets of the present invention will bend away from a score cut or perforation, while bending toward a score that is pressed into the surface of the sheet. That is, the sides of the sheet defined by a score cut or perforation will close together in the side opposite the score cut or perforation. Conversely, like conventional paper or paperboard products, the sides of the inorganically filled sheet defined by a score pressed into the sheet surface will close together on the side of the score.

H. Other Processes.

It may be desirable to apply print or other indicia on the surface of the inorganically filled sheet such as trademarks, product information, container specifications, or logos. This can be accomplished using printing means known in the art of printing conventional paper or paperboard products. In addition, the sheets may be embossed or provided with a watermark. Because the inorganically filled sheets have a relatively high porosity like conventional paper or paperboard, the applied ink will tend to dry rapidly. In addition, decals, labels or other indicia can be attached or adhered to the inorganically filled sheet using methods known in the art.

Methods for printing the inorganically filled sheets include, but are not limited to, any conventional method of printing, including planographic, relief, intaglio, porous, and impactless printing. Printed indicia may be applied to a continuous sheet or individual cut sheets depending on the printing process involved and the properties of the sheet. Individual sheets may even be fed through photocopying machines much like ordinary paper.

Planographic printing, or offset lithography, relies on the insolubility of ink and water to print in a desired area. Plates for lithography accept ink and repel water in the image areas and attracts water and repels ink in the non-image areas. Sheet-fed offset lithography is very useful as it can accommodate wide variations in the dimensions of the sheet. Additionally, the printing plates can easily be remade to accommodate different graphic designs. Web-fed or continuous feed offset lithography is similarly useful, particularly when different graphic designs are utilized with identical container designs.

Relief printing or letterpress printing involves raising the areas to be printed above the areas which will not be printed. Ink rollers touch only the top surface of the raised areas. Ink is transferred to an image carrier and applied to the sheet as the sheet passes between the image carrier and an impression cylinder. Individually cut sheets are printed on sheet-fed presses and continuous sheets are printed on web-fed presses. The presses which can be utilized in this process include platen, flatbed (cylinder), and rotary presses. Another useful form of relief printing is flexography which involves the use of flexible plates (including rubber stamps) and fast drying inks.

Intaglio printing, often called gravure or rotogravure printing, is another useful printing method. Intaglio printing involves printing directly from a rotating engraved cylinder. The engraved cylinder rotates in a source of ink and as the cylinder rotates a doctor blade removes excess ink from areas which are not intended to transmit an image. Ink is transferred from the engraved cylinder as a sheet passes between the engraved cylinder and an impression cylinder. The cylinder is more expensive than the plates utilized with sheet-fed offset lithography; however, the engraved cylinder is more durable and can be used to print more sheets than the plates used in planographic printing.

Porous printing, often called screen printing (or silk screening), is useful for printing on irregular surfaces or surfaces that are not flat. Porous printing involves forcing a screen-mesh-supported stencil of silk, synthetic fabric, or stainless steel onto the sheet.

Impactless printing prints indicia without contacting the sheet or container through jet spraying electrically charged drops of ink. This process is inexpensive and can be utilized at high speeds. Of course, ordinary pens and pencils may be employed to write messages or other information on the sheets or objects made therefrom.

I. Objects Made from Inorganically Filled Sheets.

Using the methods set forth above, it is possible to manufacture a wide variety of sheets having greatly varying properties. The sheets may also be as thin as about 0.1 mm or less in the case where very thin, flexible, and lightweight sheets are required. The sheets may also be as thick as about 1 cm in the case where relatively thick, strong, and stiff sheets are required. In addition, sheets may range in density from as low as about 0.6 g/cm³ to as high as about 2 g/cm³.
55 Generally, higher density sheets are stronger while lower density sheets are more insulative. The exact thickness or density of a particular sheet can be designed beforehand in order to yield a sheet having the desired properties at a cost which allows the sheets to be produced in an economically feasible manner.

The sheets of the present invention may be used in any application where conventional paper or paperboard have been used. In addition, due to the unique properties of the inorganically filled materials, it is possible to make a variety of objects that presently require the use of plastics, polystyrene, or even metal.

In particular, the sheets of the present invention may be used to manufacture the following: containers (including disposable and nondisposable food or beverage containers), cereal boxes, corrugated boxes, printed materials (including magazines or brochures), packaging materials (such as wrapping paper or spacing material), tape, toys, pencils, straws, cartons, boxes, sandwich containers, "clam shell" containers (including, but not limited to, hinged containers used with fast-food sandwiches such as hamburgers), frozen food boxes, milk cartons, fruit juice containers, beverage carriers (including, but not limited to, wraparound basket-style carriers, and "six pack" ring-style carriers), ice cream cartons, cups, (including but not limited to, disposable drinking cups, two piece cups, one piece pleated cups, and cone cups), french fry containers used by fast-food outlets, fast food carryout boxes, packaging, flexible packaging such as bags for snack foods, bags (including, but not limited to, bags with an open end such as grocery bags, bags within cartons such as a dry cereal box, and multiwall bags) sacks, wraparound casting, support cards for products which are displayed with a cover, particularly plastic covers (including food products such as lunch meats, office products, cosmetics, hardware items, and toys), support trays (for supporting products such as cookies and candy bars), cans, yoghurt containers, convoluted or spiral wound containers (for products such as frozen juice concentrate, oatmeal, potato chips, ice cream, salt, detergent, and motor oil), mailing tubes, sheet rolls for rolling materials (such as wrapping paper, cloth materials, paper towels and toilet paper), sleeves, cigar boxes, confectionery boxes, boxes for cosmetics, plates, vending plates, pie plates, trays, baking trays, bowls, breakfast plates, microwaveable dinner trays, "TV" dinner trays, egg cartons, meat packaging platters, wraps (including but not limited to, freezer wraps, tire wraps, butcher wraps, meat wraps, and sausage wraps), food containers, emergency emesis receptacles (i.e., "barf bags"), substantially spherical objects, bottles, jars, cases, crates, dishes, lids, straws, envelopes, gummed tape, cutlery, postcards, three-ring binders, book covers, folders, toys, 40 medicine vials, ampules, animal cages, non-flammable firework shells, model rocket engine shells, model rockets, and an endless variety of other objects.

III. Examples of the Preferred Embodiments.

The following examples are presented in order to more specifically teach the method of forming sheets and containers according to the present invention. The examples include various mix designs, as well as methods for manufacturing sheets, containers, and other articles of manufacture having varying properties and dimensions.

50 Examples 1-6

Highly inorganically filled sheets were prepared from moldable mixtures that included the following components:

Example	CaCO ₃	Fiber	Tylose®	Water
1	6 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.8 kg
2	5 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.7 kg
3	4 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.6 kg
4	3 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.5 kg
5	2 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.4 kg
6	1 kg	0.25 kg	0.1 kg	1.3 kg

The fiber that was used in each of these examples was southern pine. The water, Tylose® FL 15002, and fibers were first mixed for 10 minutes under high shear in a Hobart kneader-mixer. Thereafter, the calcium carbonate was added

to the mixture, which is mixed for an additional 4 minutes under low shear.

The particle packing density of the calcium carbonate in each of these mixtures was about 0.63, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 89.7%, 87.9%, 85.3%, 81.3%, 74.4%, and 59.2%. These correspond to the following percentages by weight of the total solids: 94.5%, 93.5%, 92.0%, 89.6%, 85.1%, and 74.1%. The sheets of Examples 1-6 contained the following amounts of fiber as a percentage by volume of the total solids, respectively: 7.2%, 8.5%, 10.3%, 13.1%, 18.0%, and 28.7%. These amounts would be considerably less if measured in weight percentage.

The moldable mixtures were extruded using a deairing auger extruder through a 30 cm \times 0.6 cm die to form continuous sheets having corresponding dimensions of width and thickness. The extruded sheet was then passed between a pair of reduction rollers having a gap distance corresponding to the thickness of the sheet formed. Because calcium carbonate has a low specific surface area these mixtures have a low adhesiveness to the rollers. The sheets formed in these examples had thicknesses of 0.23 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.38 mm, and 0.5 mm.

As less calcium carbonate was used, the tensile strength, flexibility, and folding endurance of the sheet increased. However, adding more calcium carbonate yielded a sheet with a smoother surface and easier placeability through the rollers, which reduces the amount of internal defects. Increasing the amount of CaCO_3 had the effect of decreasing the porosity of the sheet, which ranged from 37.4% to 70.3% by volume of the final dried sheets.

Examples 7-12

Highly inorganically filled sheets were prepared from moldable mixtures that include the following components:

Example	CaCO_3	Fiber	Tylose®	Water	Glass Spheres
7	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
8	1.0 kg	0.3 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
9	1.0 kg	0.4 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
10	1.0 kg	0.5 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
11	1.0 kg	0.6 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
12	1.0 kg	0.7 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg

The fiber that was used in each of these examples was southern pine. The water, Tylose® FL 15002, and fibers were first mixed for 10 minutes in a Hobart kneader-mixer. Thereafter, the calcium carbonate and hollow glass spheres were added to the mixture, which was mixed for an additional 6 minutes under low shear. The particle packing density of the combined calcium carbonate and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures was 0.73, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%.

The moldable mixtures were extruded using a deairing auger extruder through a 30 cm \times 0.6 cm die to form continuous sheets having corresponding dimensions of width and thickness. The extruded sheet was then passed between a pair of reduction rollers having a gap distance corresponding to the thickness of the sheet formed. Because calcium carbonate and glass spheres each have a low specific surface area, these mixtures have a low adhesiveness to the rollers. The sheets formed in these examples had thicknesses of 0.23 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.38 mm, and 0.5 mm.

When calcium carbonate particles having an average diameter of 35 microns were used (maximum 100 microns), the resulting sheet had a matte surface. However, when much smaller particles are used (98% of them being smaller than 2 microns), the resulting sheet had a glossy surface.

Increasing the fiber of the sheet increased the tensile strength, flexibility, and folding endurance of the final hardened sheets.

Example 13

Examples 7-12 were repeated in every respect except that 1.0 kg mica was substituted for the calcium carbonate. In all other respects the mixtures were prepared in substantially the same manner. Mica is a clay-like, plate-shaped natural mineral having an average particle size of less than about 10 microns. The particle packing density of the combined mica and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures was about 0.7, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%. The plate-like shape of the mica yields sheets having glossier surface finishes.

Example 14

The mix design and methods set forth in Example 13 were repeated in every way except that 0.25 kg of southern pine was added to the moldable mixture used to form the inorganically filled sheets. The final hardened sheets had a tensile strength of 14.56 MPa, a modulus of 2523 MPa, an elongation of 1.42% before failure in the strongest (machine) direction, and a tensile strength of 6.66% MPa and an elongation before failure of 0.93% in the weak (cross-machine) direction.

Example 15

Examples 7-12 were repeated in every respect except that 1.0 kg kaolin was substituted for the calcium carbonate. In all other respects the mixtures are prepared in substantially the same manner. Kaolin is essentially a naturally occurring clay in which 98% of the particles are smaller than about 2 microns. The particle packing density of the combined kaolin and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures was 0.69, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%. The kaolin yielded sheets having a glossy surface finish.

Examples 16-21

Highly inorganically filled sheets were prepared from moldable mixtures that include the following components:

Example	Fused Silica	Cellulose Fiber	Tylose® FL 15002	Water	Glass Spheres
16	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
17	1.0 kg	0.3 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
18	1.0 kg	0.4 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
19	1.0 kg	0.5 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
20	1.0 kg	0.6 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
21	1.0 kg	0.7 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg

The fiber that was used in each of these examples was southern pine. The water, Tylose® FL 15002, and fibers were first mixed for 10 minutes in a Hobart kneader-mixer. Thereafter, the fused silica and hollow glass spheres were

added to the mixture, which was mixed for an additional 6 minutes under low shear. The particle packing density of the combined fused silica and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures was about 0.73, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%.

The moldable mixtures were extruded using a deairing auger extruder through a 30 cm \times 0.6 cm die to form continuous sheets having corresponding dimensions of width and thickness. The extruded sheet was then passed between a pair of reduction rollers having a gap distance therebetween corresponding to the thickness of the sheet formed. Fused silica is quartzitic and has an average particle size less than about 10 microns. Because fused silica and glass spheres each have a low specific surface area, these mixtures have a low adhesiveness to the rollers. The sheets formed in these examples had thicknesses of 0.23 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.38 mm, and 0.5 mm.

Increasing the fiber of the sheet increased the tensile strength, flexibility, and folding endurance of the final hardened sheets.

While the examples which follow are hypothetical in nature, they are based on similar mix designs and processes that have actually been carried out. They are presented in this manner in order to more fully teach the invention.

Examples 22-27

Highly inorganically filled sheets are prepared from moldable mixture that include the following components:

Example	Finely Ground Granite	Cellulose Fiber	Tylose® FL 15002	Water	Glass Spheres
22	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
23	1.0 kg	0.3 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
24	1.0 kg	0.4 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
25	1.0 kg	0.5 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
26	1.0 kg	0.6 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
27	1.0 kg	0.7 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg

The fiber that is used in each of these examples is southern pine. The water, Tylose® FL 15002, and fibers are first mixed for 10 minutes in a Hobart kneader-mixer. Thereafter, the finely ground quartz and hollow glass spheres are added to the mixture, which is mixed for an additional 6 minutes under low shear. The particle packing density of the combined fused silica and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures is about 0.73, and the resulting mixtures have the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%.

The moldable mixtures are extruded using a deairing auger extruder through a 30 cm \times 0.6 cm die to form continuous sheets having corresponding dimensions of width and thickness. The extruded sheet is then passed between a pair of reduction rollers having a gap distance therebetween corresponding to the thickness of the sheet formed. The low specific surface area of the glass spheres causes these mixtures to have lower adhesiveness to the rollers. The sheets formed in these examples have thicknesses of 0.23 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.38 mm, and 0.5 mm.

Increasing the fiber of the sheet increases the tensile strength, flexibility, and folding endurance of the final hardened sheets.

Example 28

The compositions of Examples 22-27 are repeated except that 1.0 kg finely ground quartz is substituted for the finely

ground granite. In all other respects the mixtures are prepared in substantially the same manner. The particle packing density of the combined finely ground granite and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures is about 0.74, and the resulting mixtures have the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%.

Decreasing the amount of aggregate increases the effective amounts of organic binder and fibers. Including more aggregate yields sheets which have greater stiffness, are more brittle, and have greater compressive strength. Increasing the amount of fiber and organic binder yields sheets which have greater flexibility, toughness, and tensile strength.

Example 29

The compositions of Examples 22-27 are repeated except that 1.0 kg finely ground basalt is substituted for the finely ground granite. In all other respects the mixtures are prepared in substantially the same manner. The particle packing density of the combined finely ground granite and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures is about 0.74, and the resulting mixtures have the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 88.5%, 85.3%, 82.3%, 79.6%, 77.0%, and 74.5%.

Decreasing the amount of aggregate increases the effective amounts of organic binder and fibers. Including more aggregate yields sheets which have greater stiffness, are more brittle, and have greater compressive strength. Increasing the amount of fiber and organic binder yields sheets which have greater flexibility, toughness, and tensile strength.

Examples 30-34

Highly inorganically filled sheets were prepared from moldable mixtures that include the following components:

Example	CaCO ₃	Fiber	Tylose®	Water	Glass Spheres
30	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.0 kg
31	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	0.5 kg
32	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	1.0 kg
33	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	1.5 kg
34	1.0 kg	0.2 kg	0.1 kg	2.1 kg	2.0 kg

The fiber that was used in each of these examples is southern pine. The water, Tylose® FL 5002, and fibers were first mixed for 10 minutes in a Hobart kneader-mixer. Thereafter, the calcium carbonate and hollow glass spheres were added to the mixture, which was mixed for an additional 6 minutes under low shear. The particle packing density of the combined calcium carbonate and hollow glass spheres in each of these mixtures was about 0.73, and the resulting mixtures had the following percentages by volume of the total solids of inorganic aggregate, respectively: 62.8%, 58.5%, 93.2%, 95.2%, and 96.6%. The densities (expressed as g/cm³) of the resulting sheets were 2.0, 0.87, 0.66, 0.57, and 0.52, respectively.

The moldable mixtures were extruded using a deairing auger extruder through a 30 cm \times 0.6 cm die to form continuous sheets having corresponding dimensions of width and thickness. The extruded sheets were then passed between a pair of reduction rollers having a gap distance therebetween corresponding to the thickness of the sheets formed. Because calcium carbonate and glass spheres each have a low specific surface area these mixtures had a low

adhesive ness to the rollers. The sheets formed in these examples had thicknesses of 0.23 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.38 mm, and 0.5 mm.

Example 35

Relatively thin inorganically filled sheets were formed by molding an inorganically filled mixture which included the following:

Water	2.0 kg
Tylose® FL 15002	0.2 kg
Hollow Glass Spheres (<100 microns)	2.0 kg
Abaca Fiber	5% by volume of total solids

The inorganically filled mixture was made by prewetting the abaca fiber (which is pretreated by the manufacturer so that greater than 85% of the cellulose is α -hydroxycellulose) and then adding the excess water and the fibers to a mixture of Tylose®. This mixture was mixed at relatively high speed for about 10 minutes, and then at a relatively slow speed for 10 minutes after the hollow glass spheres were added.

This mixture was passed between a pair of rollers and formed into sheets having a thickness of about 1 mm. Wet sheets were scored and then folded in an attempt to create a box. A fair amount of splitting resulted and a box with sufficient strength and integrity generally could not be formed.

Thereafter, sheets were first allowed to harden and then scored, folded into the shape of a box, and glued together by cementing or gluing methods well-known in the paper art. The amount of splitting at the fold was negligible, demonstrating that it is preferable to score and then fold the thin sheets after they have been allowed to harden or solidify somewhat. The thin sheets were formed into a box that had the shape, look and weight of a dry cereal box manufactured presently from paperboard stock.

Example 36

The dried sheets formed in Example 35 were cut into the appropriate shape, convoluted to form a cup, and glued using adhesive means known in the art. Examples 35 and 36 demonstrated that it is possible to make boxes, cups, or other containers of similar shape presently made from paperboard, paper, or plastic.

The following examples demonstrate that highly flexible inorganically filled sheets having high toughness and strength can be manufactured. They are useful in containment applications where cushioning and flexibility are of particular interest.

While the examples which follow are hypothetical in nature, they are based on similar mix designs and processes that have actually been carried out. They are presented in this manner in order to more fully teach the invention.

Examples 37-41

Flexible, cushioning sheets are formed from inorganically filled mixtures containing 2.0 kg water, 0.1 kg Tylose® FL 5002, and 2% abaca fibers by volume of the mixture, along with the following quantities of plastic spheres:

Example Plastic Spheres

Example	Plastic Spheres
37	1.12 kg
38	0.9213 kg
39	0.7225 kg
40	0.5238 kg
41	0.3251 kg

10 The "plastic spheres" are made from polypropylene and have average particle sizes less than 100 microns and an average density of 0.02 g/cm³. The inorganically filled mixtures are made by first mixing together the water, Tylose®, and fibers under high shear conditions for 5 minutes and then mixing the plastic spheres into the mixture under low shear conditions. The resulting inorganically filled mixture is extruded through a die and then passed between a pair of rollers to form sheets that are 5 mm thick.

15 20 The inorganically filled sheets are very flexible and relatively strong in comparison to similar materials made from polystyrene.

These packaging materials can be physically compressed without crumbling, even when subjected to forces that are greater than forces normally experienced by polystyrene materials. The flexible inorganically filled materials are alternatively extruded into the shape of rectangular shaped bars, which more dramatically demonstrate the degree of flexibility made possible by this mixture.

Examples 42-45

Flexible inorganically filled sheets are made according to Examples 37-41, except that the amount of abaca fibers in the inorganically filled mixture are increased to the following amounts, as measured by volume percent:

Example	Abaca Fiber
42	4%
43	6%
44	8%
45	10%

45 The resulting inorganically filled sheets made therefrom have substantially the same densities and flexibilities as those in Examples 37-41, but with increasing tensile strengths as the amount of abaca fiber is increased.

50 In the following examples, very thin sheets are formed (0.1-0.5 mm) which have many characteristics and properties which make them suitable for use much like paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal sheets of similar thickness and weight. The desired properties are designed into the sheets using a micro-structural engineering approach. This allows for the manufacture of sheets having a variety of desirable properties, including properties not generally possible using mass-produced sheet-like objects presently manufactured from the foregoing materials.

Examples 46-63

65 Sheets capable of being formed into a variety of objects (including food or beverage containers) were manufactured from a hydraulically settable mixture which contained the following components:

Portland Cement	1.0 kg
Perlite	0.5 kg
Mica	0.5 kg
Fiber (Southern pine)	0.25 kg
Tylose® FL 15002	0.2 kg
Water	2.5 kg

The portland cement, mica, fiber, Tylose®, and water were mixed together in a high shear mixer for 5 minutes, after which the perlite was added and the resulting mixture was mixed for an additional 5 minutes in a low shear mixer. The hydraulically settable mixture was then placed into an auger extruder and extruded through a die having an opening in the shape of a slit. The mixture was extruded into continuous sheets having a width of 300 mm and a thickness of 6 mm.

The sheets were thereafter passed between one or more pairs of reduction rollers in order to obtain sheets having final thicknesses of 0.2 mm, 0.25 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.35 mm, 0.4 mm, 0.45 mm, and 0.5 mm, respectively. The rollers had a diameter of 17 cm. The rollers were made of stainless steel and coated with polished nickel (0.1 RMS) to aid in preventing the hydraulically settable mixture from sticking to the rollers. In addition, the rollers were heated to a temperature of 10° C. to further prevent sticking between the mixture and the rollers.

In order to obtain sheets having the desired thickness, the extruded sheets were reduced in steps by using reduction roller pairs having progressively smaller gap distances between the rollers. The sheet thicknesses were reduced as follows:

6 mm → 2 mm → 0.5 mm → final thickness

A combination of the extrusion process and the rolling process yielded sheets with significantly unidirectionally oriented fibers along the length (or machine direction) of the sheet. Because of this, the sheets had higher tensile strength in the machine direction compared to the cross-machine direction. This factor can be utilized in order to maximize the performance of the container in the direction in which tensile strength is more important.

The hardened inorganically filled sheets were finished, coated, and then formed into a number of different food and beverage containers. For example, a "cold cup" (such as those in which cold soft drinks are dispensed at fast food restaurants) was made by cutting an appropriate blank from a sheet, rolling the blank into the shape of a cup, adhering the ends of the rolled blank using conventional water-based glue, placing a disc at the bottom of the cup, and then crimping the bottom of the rolled wall portion in order to hold the bottom in place, and curling the rim of the cup to strengthen the rim and create a smoother drinking surface. Sheets having thicknesses of 0.3 mm and 0.4 mm were used to make the cups.

The amount of deflection when applying a constant force 1 inch below the rim was comparable to that in conventional paper cups. The uncotted inorganically filled cups did not leak when an aqueous solution containing methylene blue and 0.1% surfactant was placed inside the cup for 5 minutes. Of course, any leakage that were to occur could be prevented by an appropriate coating.

A "clam shell" container (such as those presently used in the fast food industry to package hamburgers) was made by cutting an appropriate blank from a sheet, score cutting the blank to form the desired fold lines, folding the blank into

the shape of a clam shell container, and adhering the ends of the folded blank (using both adhesive and interlocking flap means) to preserve the integrity of the container. Sheets having thicknesses of 0.4 mm and 0.5 mm were used to make the clam shell containers.

The sheet is bent or closed together on the side of the sheet opposite the score cut. It should be noted that normal scores in conventional materials generally allow the sheet to more easily bend or close together on the side of the score. The resulting clam shell containers exhibited comparable or superior insulating ability compared to paper clam shells.

A french fry container (such as those used to serve cooked french fries in the fast food industry) was made by cutting an appropriate blank from a sheet, score cutting the blank to form the desired fold lines, folding the blank into the shape of a french fry container, and adhering the ends of the folded blank using adhesive means to preserve the integrity of the container. Sheets having thicknesses of 0.25 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.35 mm, 0.4 mm, 0.45 mm, and 0.5 mm were used to make the french fry containers.

A frozen food box (such as those used by supermarkets to package frozen foods such as vegetables or french fries) was made by cutting an appropriate blank from a sheet, score cutting the blank to form the desired fold lines, folding the blank into the shape of a frozen food box, and adhering the ends of the folded blank using adhesive means to preserve the integrity of the box. Sheets having thicknesses of 0.25 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.35 mm, 0.4 mm, 0.45 mm, and 0.5 mm were used to make the frozen food boxes.

A cold cereal box was made by cutting an appropriate blank from a 0.3 mm thick sheet, score cutting the blank to form the desired fold lines, folding the blank into the shape of a cold cereal box, and adhering the ends of the folded blank using adhesive means to preserve the integrity of the cereal box.

A straw was made by rolling a piece of a 0.25 mm sheet into the form of a straw and adhering the ends together using adhesion means known in the art. In making the straw, as in making each of the containers set forth above, it is advantageous to control the moisture content of the sheet in order to maintain the highest level of flexibility of the sheet. The higher level of flexibility minimizes splitting and tearing of the sheet.

The containers were found to break down in the presence of water over time, with 1 day being the average time of disintegration. The excess waste material that is trimmed from the sheets when making the containers was easily recycled by simply breaking it up and mixing it back into the hydraulically settable mixture.

The containers so made are set forth as follows, including the thickness of the sheet used to make each container:

Example	Container	Sheet Thickness
46	cold cup	0.3 mm
47	cold cup	0.4 mm
48	clam shell	0.4 mm
49	clam shell	0.5 mm
50	french fry container	0.25 mm
51	french fry container	0.3 mm
52	french fry container	0.35 mm
53	french fry container	0.4 mm
54	french fry container	0.45 mm
55	french fry container	0.5 mm
56	frozen food box	0.25 mm
57	frozen food box	0.3 mm
58	frozen food box	0.35 mm
59	frozen food box	0.4 mm

Example	Container	Sheet Thickness
60	frozen food box	0.45 mm
61	frozen food box	0.5 mm
62	cold cereal box	0.3 mm
63	drinking straw	0.25 mm

Example 64

The procedures and equipment set forth in Examples 46-63 are repeated in every respect except that a highly inorganically filled mixture having the following components is used instead of the hydraulically settable mixture:

Perlite	1.0 kg
Mica	1.0 kg
Fiber (Southern pine)	0.25 kg
Tylose® FL 15002	0.2 kg
Water	2.5 kg

The mica, fiber, Tylose®, and water are mixed together in a high shear mixer for 5 minutes, after which the perlite is added and the resulting mixture is mixed for an additional 5 minutes in a low shear mixer. The inorganically filled mixture is then placed into an auger extruder and extruded through a die having an opening in the shape of a slit. The mixture is extruded into continuous sheets having a width of 300 mm and a thickness of 6 mm.

The sheets are thereafter passed between one or more pairs of reduction rollers in order to obtain sheets having final thicknesses of 0.2 mm, 0.25 mm, 0.3 mm, 0.35 mm, 0.4 mm, 0.45 mm, and 0.5 mm, respectively.

The hardened inorganically filled sheets have similar qualities to the hydraulically settable sheets made in Examples 46-63, except that the exclusion of portland cement yields sheets which are less brittle and more flexible, but which are less resistant to water degradation. The sheets are otherwise similar and can be processed into each of the containers set forth above, including a cold cup, clam shell, french fry container, frozen food box, cold cereal box, and drinking straw.

Example 65

Example 63 is repeated in every respect except that the sheet used to form the drinking straw has a thickness of only 0.05 mm. The drinking straw formed in this example contains approximately $\frac{1}{3}$ the mass of the straw that is 0.25 mm thick, making it more suitable for the mass production of disposable, single-use drinking straws.

Example 66

The inorganically filled sheets used to manufacture the containers in Examples 64-66 are printed using conventional printing presses used to print conventional paper sheets. The ink is able to dry as fast or faster as compared to conventional paper sheets. The printed sheets could then be formed into any of the containers listed above.

Example 67

A printed inorganically filled sheet obtained in Example 66 is formed into the shape of a cup according to the procedure set forth in Example 46, except that the top rim is treated with a mineral oil lubricant prior to the step of

curling the top of the cup. Nevertheless, as above, curling is possible without mineral oil. The cup has all of the necessary properties of weight, strength, and water resistance for commercial use in the fast food industry, as well as including

5 identifying information.

Example 68

Clam shell containers are made using the sheets made according to Examples 46-64. The sheets are tested to determine the optimum score cut depth which will allow for the easiest bend, while at the same time leaving a hinge with the highest strength and resilience. Score depths ranging between 20% to 50% are tested, with a score depth of 25% yielding the best results. In addition, it is found that thicker sheets (0.4-0.5 mm) give a better score and yielded a stronger, more rigid clam shell container.

Example 69

20 A clam shell is made using the sheets of Examples 46-64, except that a triple reverse hinge is used. That is, a series of three score cuts are cut into the outer side of the clam shell container. Because this decreases the distance that each individual score line has to bend, the resulting hinge can be opened and closed more times without breaking compared to a single score cut hinge.

Example 70

20 Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are passed through a commercial wax coating machine, whereby a uniform layer of wax is applied to the surface. The layer of wax completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight.

35

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are made from sheets that are pretreated with starch. This has the effect of greatly reducing the absorption of water by the cups, although over time they will be water degradable.

40

Example 71

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with an acrylic coating using a fine spraying nozzle.

45 Similar to the wax in Example 70, the layer of acrylic coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. The acrylic coating has the added advantage that it is not as visible as the wax coating. Because a thinner acrylic coating is possible, the cup looks almost as if it is uncoated. The glossiness of the cup can be controlled by using different types of acrylic coatings.

Example 73

55 Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, 64 are coated with a commercially used melamine coating using a fine spraying nozzle. As in Examples 70 and 72, the layer of melamine coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. The melamine coating is also less visible and could be applied in a thinner coat compared to the wax coating. The glossiness of the cup can be controlled by using different types of melamine coatings.

Example 74

65 Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of a mixture of hydroxymethylcellulose plasticized

with polyethylene glycol. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight. However, the surface looks even more natural and less glossy than cups coated with wax, acrylic, or melamine.

Example 75

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of polylactic acid. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight.

Example 76

Cold cups made according to Examples 46, 47, and 64 are coated with a totally environmentally benign coating consisting of soy bean protein. This coating completely seals the surface of the cup to moisture and renders it watertight.

Examples 77-83

Clam shell containers made according to Examples 48, 49, and 64 are alternatively coated with the same coating materials used to coat the cold cups in Examples 70-76. The results are substantially identical to those achieved with the coated cups.

Example	Coating Material
77	wax
78	starch
79	acrylic
80	melamine
81	plasticized hydroxymethylcellulose
82	polylactic acid
83	soy bean protein

Examples 84-90

French fry containers made according to Examples 50-55 and 64 are alternatively coated with the same coating materials used to coat the cold cups in Examples 70-76. The results are substantially identical to those achieved with the coated cups.

Example	Coating Material
84	wax
85	starch
86	acrylic
87	melamine
88	plasticized hydroxymethylcellulose
89	polylactic acid
90	soy bean protein

Examples 91-97

Frozen food containers made according to Examples 56-61 and 64 are alternatively coated with the same coating materials used to coat the cold cups in Examples 70-76. The results are substantially identical to those achieved with the coated cups.

Example	Coating Material
91	wax
92	starch

-continued

Example	Coating Material
93	acrylic
94	melamine
95	plasticized hydroxymethylcellulose
96	polylactic acid
97	soy bean protein

10

Examples 98-104

Cold cereal boxes made according to Examples 62 and 64 are alternatively coated with the same coating materials used to coat the cold cups in Examples 70-76. The results are substantially identical to those achieved with the coated cups.

Example	Coating Material
98	wax
99	starch
100	acrylic
101	melamine
102	plasticized hydroxymethylcellulose
103	polylactic acid
104	soy bean protein

20

Examples 105-111

30 Drinking straws made according to Examples 63 and 64 are alternatively coated with the same coating materials used to coat the cold cups in Examples 70-76. The results are substantially identical to those achieved with the coated cups with regard to the outer surface of the straws, although it is 35 more difficult to adequately coat the inside of the straw in this manner.

Example	Coating Material
105	wax
106	starch
107	acrylic
108	melamine
109	plasticized hydroxymethylcellulose
110	polylactic acid
111	soy bean protein

40

Example 112

50 The same mix design set forth in Examples 46-63 is used to manufacture sheets of varying thickness between 0.25 mm and 0.5 mm. The mixing, extrusion, and rolling processes are in every way the same. Dry sheets of each thickness are cut into circular shapes and formed into a paper plate using a commercial mechanical press fitted with a progressive die used to make such plates out of paper stock. The details of the stamped inorganically filled plates stand out perfectly and are substantially similar in shape, strength and appearance compared to conventional paper plates. 55 However, the inorganically filled plates are more rigid than conventional paper plates and, hence, possess more structural integrity when food is placed on or within the plates.

60 Dry sheets obtained in Example 112 are first wetted to contain 5% additional water by weight of the initially dry sheet before they are pressed into plates (keeping in mind

Example 113

that the apparently "dry" sheets contain water within the inorganically filled matrix even when they feel dry and possess maximum stiffness. The added water helps the sheets become more flexible (i.e., higher elongation before rupture) which results in a plate that has a better impression and detail compared to conventional paper plates formed by the same process. In addition, the added water eliminates crimping by allowing the wetted sheet material to flow. The press is heated to 200° C. and the extra water evaporates during the very short press time (e.g., less than one second) through vent holes in the heated mold, yielding a dry product of higher stiffness than paper.

Example 114

Dry sheets obtained in Example 112 are first wetted to contain 10% additional water by weight of the initially dry sheet before they are pressed into plates. The added water helps the sheets become even more flexible, although the impressions and detail are comparable to the results of Example 113. As a result of adding extra water, the molding takes a little more time in order to drive off the extra water and form a plate that is substantially dry. It is found that the molding time can be reduced by increasing the temperature of the mold. The final product is stiffer than comparable paper plates.

Example 115

Dry sheets obtained in Example 112 are first wetted to contain 20% additional water by weight of the initially dry sheet before they are pressed into plates. The added water helps the sheets become even more flexible than the sheets in Example 114 to the point where the molding process can be classified as a wet sheet molding process rather than dry sheet stamping. The resulting product is superior to a paper stamping process because there are no fold lines whatsoever in the pressed material. The final product is stiffer than comparable paper plates.

Example 116

Dry sheets obtained in Example 112 are first wetted to contain 30% additional water by weight of the initially dry sheet before they are pressed into plates. The added water helps the sheets become slightly more flexible than the sheets in Example 115, although the molding process and results are similar. The resulting product is superior to a paper stamping process because there are no fold lines whatsoever in the pressed material. Because of the extra water, the molding process takes a little longer than when less water is used to moisten the sheets. Heating the molds to a higher temperature reduces molding times. The final product is stiffer than comparable paper plates.

Example 117

The processes of Examples 112–116 are repeated in every way except that a commercial acrylic coating is applied to one side of the sheets prior to their being pressed into plates as above. In the case where a sheet is remoistened, the water is sprayed on the side opposite the side onto which the coating is placed. The coating provides the plates with a glossier surface and renders them more water resistant.

Example 118

The processes of Examples 112–116 are repeated in every way except that a commercial polyethylene coating is applied to one side of the sheets prior to their being pressed

into plates as above. In the case where a sheet is remoistened, the water is sprayed on the side opposite the side onto which the coating is placed. The coating provides the plates with a glossier surface and renders them more water resistant.

Examples 119–125

The processes set forth in Examples 112–118 are repeated except that the sheets are pressed into the shape of a bowl using a conventional press used to manufacture disposable paper bowls from paper stock. The inorganically filled bowls have a diameter of 5 cm and a depth of 3 cm. Because of the deeper impression and greater degree of bending and deformation necessary to form a bowl from a flat sheet, sheets having an added moisture content less than 10% yield some defects. However, the use of at least 10% added water gives a good product with better impressions, no folding and a smoother surface compared to bowls made from paper.

Example	Added Water	Coating
119	0%	none
120	5%	none
121	10%	none
122	20%	none
123	30%	none
124	variable	acrylic
125	variable	polyethylene

Examples 126–132

The molding processes set forth in Examples 112–118 are repeated except that the sheets are pressed into the shapes of a two part breakfast platter, including a top and bottom half. The top half has a length of 20 cm and a depth of 3.5 cm, while the bottom half has a length of 21 cm and a depth of 1.0 cm. Sheets having a thickness of 0.8 mm are used, yielding pieces which each weigh between 12–15 g. Although they are as similar in weight compared to existing breakfast platters used in the fast food industry, they are more rigid.

The top and bottom halves are complementary in size and can be interlocked together to form a closed container using tabs on the sides of the top half and slots in the sides of the bottom half. The product is flexible enough that nonshattering failure occurs when crushed. Those that are coated exhibited a synergistic effect between the coating and the inorganically filled matrix, wherein the product becomes stronger, tougher and more elastic before rupture due to the high elongation of the elastomeric coating.

Example	Added Water	Coating
126	0%	none
127	5%	none
128	10%	none
129	20%	none
130	30%	none
131	variable	acrylic
132	variable	polyethylene

Example 133

A two-part breakfast platter is manufactured using the mix design set forth in Examples 126–132, except that instead of drying and then rewetting the rolled sheet, a wet sheet is directly molded into the shape of the breakfast platter. The

wet sheet is readily molded and results in very few surface and structural defects. The breakfast platter made in this example has a thickness of 0.5 mm and possesses similar weight and insulation properties as the platter made in the previous examples.

Example 134

Containers set forth above are placed in a microwave oven and tested for microwave compatibility; that is, they are tested to determine whether the containers themselves, or the food items within them, become hot when a container and food are exposed to microwave radiation. In fact, the containers themselves will remain cool. Because of the low dielectric constant of the material, all of the energy goes into the food not the container.

For the same reason, steam which may condense onto the surface of the container during the initial stages of the microwaving quickly revaporizes under further microwaving. Therefore, when the food container is opened, no condensed steam is on the surface of the container after the microwave process. Any excess steam comes out when the container is opened, leaving food which looks and tastes better. This is in sharp contrast to polystyrene containers which tend to accumulate large amounts of condensed steam on the container surfaces, thereby rendering a "soggy" and, hence, less desirable, food product. In addition, polystyrene containers often melt if the food is heated too long.

The specific heats of the inorganically filled materials, as well as the hydraulically settable materials, of the present invention are relatively low, and having a low thermal constant. This allows for less thermal conduction from the food to the container during the microwave process. It is possible, therefore, to remove the container from the microwave without burning the hands. After the container is removed from the microwave oven it slowly warms (by absorbing some of the heat within the food) but never becomes too hot to touch.

Example 135

Flat paper sheets suitable for manufacturing a wide variety of food and beverage containers are manufactured from an inorganically filled mixture containing the following:

Perlite	0.6 kg
Hollow Glass Spheres (<0.1 mm)	1.0 kg
Mica	1.0 kg
Fiber (Southern pine)	0.25 kg
Tylose® FL 15002	0.2 kg
Water	2.5 kg

The mica, fiber, Tylose®, and water are mixed together in a high shear mixer for 5 minutes, after which the perlite and hollow glass spheres are added and the resulting mixture is mixed using low shear. The mixture is extruded using an auger extruder and a die into a sheet 30 cm wide and 0.6 cm thick. The sheet is passed successively between pairs of heated rollers in order to reduce the thickness of the sheet to between 0.1 mm and 2 mm.

As a result of the lower specific surface area of the glass spheres (200–250 m²/kg) compared to perlite, the mixture of Example 135 yields a product with a more uniform thickness and improved surface finish compared to the mix design of Examples 46–63. The reduced specific surface area of the aggregates reduces the amount of moisture that is removed when contacting the heated rollers. The material, therefore, remains more moldable, retains the optimum rheology, and

results in less microdefects and more uniformity during the rolling process.

Example 136

The sheets made according to Example 135 are cut, rolled, and glued into 10 oz. drinking cups using a commercial paper cup manufacturing machine. The cups are alternatively coated with a wax coating in order to render them more waterproof.

Example 137

An inorganically filled mixture is made having the following components:

15

Gypsum hemihydrate	1.0 kg
Perlite	0.5 kg
Tylose®	0.075 kg
Fiber	0.25 kg
Water	2.6 kg

20

The gypsum, Tylose®, fiber, and water are mixed together in a high shear mixer for 3 minutes, after which the perlite is added and mixed in a low shear mixer for an additional 3 minutes.

The mixture is extruded into a sheet having a thickness of 6 mm and then rolled in order to reduce the thickness of the sheets in steps to yield sheets having a final thickness ranging between 0.25 mm to 0.5 mm.

These sheets are readily formed into an appropriate food or beverage container using any appropriate procedure set forth in this Specification. The strength properties are comparable to containers made using other mixtures and may be useful in the place of, e.g., paper, paperboard, or polystyrene containers.

Example 138

Any of the inorganically filled mix designs is altered to include about 25% gypsum hemihydrate by weight of the aggregate. The gypsum acts as a water absorbing component (or internal drying agent) and results in quicker form stability. The strength properties of containers formed therefrom are comparable to mixtures not including gypsum.

45

Example 139

Any of the inorganically filled mix designs is altered to include about 25% portland cement by weight of the aggregate. The portland cement acts as a water absorbing component (or internal drying agent) and results in quicker form stability. In addition, the portland cement improves the internal cohesiveness of the moldable mixture, which improves the workability and form stability of the mixture. Finally, the portland cement improves the strength and increases the stiffness of the final hardened product. Also, it reduces the flexibility of the product to some degree.

55

Example 140

Inorganically filled sheets using any of the mix designs set forth above are used to manufacture printed reading materials, such as magazines or brochures. Such magazines and brochures contain both thinner, more flexible sheets, as well as thicker, less flexible sheets. The thinner, more flexible sheets have a thickness of about 0.25–0.05 mm, while the thicker, less flexible sheets have a thickness of about 0.1–0.2 mm.

Example 141

Using any of the foregoing compositions, corrugated inorganically filled sheets containing a fluted inner structure sandwiched between two flat sheets are formed. The flat outer sheets are formed by rolling the material into a flat sheet of the appropriate thickness. The corrugated, or fluted inner sheet (which is similar to the fluted or corrugated inner sheet of an ordinary cardboard box) is formed by passing either a hardened or remoistened flat inorganically filled sheet of the appropriate thickness through a pair of rollers with intermeshing corrugated surfaces or teeth.

Glue is applied to the surfaces of the corrugated sheet, which is then sandwiched between two flat sheets and allowed to harden. The corrugated/sandwich sheet construction had superior properties of strength, toughness, and rigidity compared to conventional corrugated cardboard sheets.

Example 142

Highly inorganically filled sheets were prepared and then coated with an external sizing to determine the effect, if any, on the strength and other properties of the sheets. The sheets were formed by extruding, and then passing between a pair of rollers, a moldable mixture containing the following:

Calcium Carbonate	1.0 kg
Hollow Glass Spheres	0.5 kg
Southern Pine	0.4 kg
Tylose ® FL 15002	0.4 kg
Water	2.1 kg

A hardened sheet (Sheet 1) formed therefrom and having a thickness of 1 mm had tensile strength of 18.48 MPa, a modulus of 1863 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 2.42%. Sheet 1 was then "sized" (or coated in order to seal the pores of the sheet) using an aqueous starch solution. The resulting sized sheet had a tensile strength of 21.83 MPa, a modulus of 2198 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 2.02%. This shows that a starch sizing increases the tensile strength and stiffness of an inorganically filled sheet.

A second hardened sheet formed from the above moldable mixture (Sheet 2) was found to have a tensile strength of 21.21 MPa, a modulus of 2120 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 3.22%. Sheet 2 was then sized using an aqueous latex-kaolin sizing (70% loading). The sized sheet had a tensile strength of 18.59 MPa, a modulus of 3305 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 2.13%. This shows that a latex-kaolin sizing decreases the tensile strength while increasing the stiffness of an inorganically filled sheet. This coating reduced the water absorption of the sheet to a more significant degree than the starch coating.

Another of Sheet 2 was instead sized using a mixture of latex-kaolin-starch (70% loading) sizing. The sized sheet had a tensile strength of 15.31 MPa, a modulus of 3954 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 1.28%. This shows that a kaolin-latex-starch sizing decreases the tensile strength while increasing the stiffness of an inorganically filled sheet to a greater degree than a latex-kaolin sizing.

A third hardened sheet formed from the above moldable mixture (Sheet 3) was found to have a tensile strength of 11.11 MPa, a modulus of 1380 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 1.86%. Sheet 3 was then sized using a latex-kaolin sizing (50% loading), yielding a sized sheet having a tensile strength of 10.78 MPa, a modulus of 2164 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 1.62%. This sizing

material slightly decreases the strength while moderately increasing the stiffness of the sheet.

Another of Sheet 3 was instead sized using a latex-kaolin-starch sizing (50% loading), yielding a sheet having a tensile strength of 10.86 MPa, a modulus of 1934 MPa, and an elongation before failure of 1.15%.

Example 143

Highly inorganically filled sheets were formed by extruding and then passing between a pair of rollers a moldable mixture having the following components:

		Specific Gravity	Volume
15	Calcium Carbonate	0.5 kg	2.5
	Southern Pine	0.5 kg	1.29
	Tylose ® FL 15002	0.3 kg	1.22
	Water	1.0 kg	1.0
20	Total Solids		83.4%

The volume of the fibers with respect to the total solids volume was 46.5%. The sheet formed in this example was found to have a tensile strength of 56 MPa.

Example 144

The mix design and sheet forming process of Example 143 are repeated in every respect except that some of the calcium carbonate is replaced with calcium oxide. This creates a binding effect as the calcium oxide is converted to calcium carbonate through the reaction with carbon dioxide and water.

Example 145

Waste inorganically filled containers, as well as hydraulically settable containers, were composted along with waste food. After 4 weeks, the containers were completely broken down and resulted in compost which substantially resembled potting soil.

IV. Summary.

From the foregoing, it will be appreciated that the present invention provides improved compositions and methods for manufacturing highly inorganically filled mixtures that can be formed into sheets and other objects presently formed from paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, glass, or metal.

In addition, the present invention provides compositions and methods which yield highly inorganically filled sheets which have properties similar to those of paper, paperboard, polystyrene, plastic, or metal sheets. Such sheets can be formed into a variety of containers and other objects using existing manufacturing equipment and techniques presently used to form such objects from paper, paperboard, plastic, polystyrene, or metal sheets.

Further, the present invention provides the ability to manufacture sheets formed from moldable mixtures which contain only a fraction of the water of typical slurries used to make paper and which do not require intensive dewatering during the sheet forming process.

In addition, the present invention provides sheets, as well as containers or other objects made therefrom, are readily degradable into substances which are commonly found in the earth.

Moreover, the present invention provides compositions and methods which make possible the manufacture of sheets, containers, and other objects therefrom at a cost that is comparable or even superior to existing methods of

manufacturing paper or polystyrene products. Further, such methods for manufacturing sheets are less energy intensive, conserve valuable natural resources, and require lower initial capital investments compared to the manufacture of sheets from conventional materials.

The present invention provides compositions and methods for mass producing highly inorganically filled sheets that can rapidly be formed and substantially dried within a matter of minutes from the beginning of the manufacturing process.

Further, the present invention provides compositions and methods which allow for the production of highly inorganically filled materials having greater flexibility, tensile strength, toughness, moldability, and mass-productivity compared to materials having a high content of inorganic filler.

The present invention may be embodied in other specific forms without departing from its spirit or essential characteristics. The described embodiments are to be considered in all respects as illustrative only and not restrictive. The scope of the invention is, therefore, indicated by the appended claims rather than by the foregoing description. All changes which come within the meaning and range of equivalency of the claims are to be embraced within their scope.

What is claimed and desired to be secured by United States Letters Patent is:

1. A sheet comprising an inorganically filled matrix including a substantially homogeneous mixture of organic binder and inorganic aggregate, and a fibrous material substantially homogeneously dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix, the organic binder being selected from the group consisting of polysaccharides, proteins, and mixtures or derivatives thereof, the inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 40% to about 95% by weight of total solids in the sheet, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness in a range from about 0.01 mm to about 1 cm and degrades after prolonged exposure to water.

2. A sheet as defined in claim 1, the inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 50% to about 90% by weight of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

3. A sheet as defined in claim 1, the inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 60% to about 80% by weight of the total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

4. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate comprises at least two different aggregate materials.

5. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate comprises individual particles that are size optimized in order to achieve a predetermined particle packing density of the aggregate.

6. A sheet as defined in claim 5, wherein the particle packing density of the aggregate is at least about 0.65.

7. A sheet as defined in claim 5, wherein the particle packing density of the aggregate is at least about 0.75.

8. A sheet as defined in claim 5, wherein the particle packing density of the aggregate is at least about 0.85.

9. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate comprises a lightweight aggregate selected from the group consisting of perlite, vermiculite, hollow glass spheres, porous ceramic spheres, lightweight expanded geological materials, pumice, and mixtures thereof.

10. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate is selected from the group consisting of clay, gypsum, calcium carbonate, mica, silica, alumina, sand, gravel, sandstone, limestone, and mixtures thereof.

11. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix further includes an organic aggregate selected from the group consisting of seeds, starch granules, gelatins, agar materials, and mixtures thereof.

12. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate includes an inorganic gel.

13. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate includes an inorganic material that is precipitated in situ.

14. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganic aggregate comprises a polymerized silicate.

15. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness less than about 3 mm.

16. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness less than about 1 mm.

17. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness less than about 0.5 mm.

18. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder has a concentration in a range from about 1% to about 50% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

19. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder has a concentration in a range from about 2% to about 30% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

20. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder has a concentration in a range from about 5% to about 20% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

21. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder comprises a cellulosic material.

22. A sheet as defined in claim 21, wherein the cellulosic material is selected from the group consisting of methylhydroxyethylcellulose, hydroxymethylcellulose, carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, ethylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose, hydroxyethylpropylcellulose, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

23. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder comprises a starch or a derivative thereof.

24. A sheet as defined in claim 23, wherein the starch or derivative thereof is selected from the group consisting of amylopectin, amylose, seagel, starch acetates, starch hydroxyethyl ethers, ionic starches, long-chain alkylstarches, dextrins, amino starches, phosphate starches, dihydroxy starches, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

25. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the protein or derivative thereof is selected from the group consisting of prolamine, collagen, gelatin, glue, casein, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

26. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the polysaccharide or derivative thereof is selected from the group consisting of alginic acid, phycocolloids, agar, gum arabic, guar gum, locust bean gum, gum karaya, gum tragacanth, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

27. A sheet as defined in claim 1, further including a synthetic organic polymer dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix.

28. A sheet as defined in claim 27, wherein the synthetic organic polymer is selected from the group consisting of polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyethylene glycol, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylmethyl ether, polyacrylic acids, polyacrylic acid salts, polyvinylacrylic acids, polyvinylacrylic acid salts, polyacrylamides, polylactic acid, ethylene oxide polymers, synthetic clay, latex, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

29. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the fibrous material has a concentration up to about 50% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

30. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material has a concentration in a range from about 5% to about 40% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

31. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material has a concentration in a range from about 15% to about 30% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

32. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material comprises organic fibers.

33. A sheet as defined in claim 32, wherein the organic fibers are selected from the group consisting of hemp, cotton, bagasse, abaca, flax, southern pine, and southern hardwood fibers, and mixtures thereof.

34. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material comprises inorganic fibers.

35. A sheet as defined in claim 34, wherein the inorganic fibers are selected from the group consisting of glass fibers, silica fibers, ceramic fibers, carbon fibers, metal fibers, and mixtures thereof.

36. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material comprises a mixture of different fibers having varying strengths and flexibilities.

37. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material includes individual fibers having an aspect ratio greater than about 10:1.

38. A sheet as defined in claim 29, wherein the fibrous material includes individual fibers having an average aspect ratio of at least about 100:1.

39. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the fibrous material includes individual fibers having an average aspect ratio of at least about 1000:1.

40. A sheet as defined in claim 1, further including a coating material on a surface of the inorganically filled matrix.

41. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet has a tensile strength in a range from about 0.05 MPa to about 70 MPa.

42. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet has a tensile strength in a range from about 5 MPa to about 40 MPa.

43. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix further includes a hydraulically settable material.

44. A sheet as defined in claim 43, wherein the hydraulically settable material is selected from the group consisting of a hydraulic cement, calcium oxide, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

45. A sheet as defined in claim 44, wherein the hydraulically settable material has a concentration great enough to impart a binding effect within the inorganically filled matrix.

46. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a maximum bulk density of about 2 g/cm³.

47. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet is laminated together with at least one other sheet.

48. A sheet as defined in claim 47, wherein the at least one other sheet also includes an inorganically filled matrix.

49. A sheet as defined in claim 47, wherein the at least one other sheet is selected from the group consisting of organic polymer sheets, metal foils, fiber sheets, ceramic sheets, ionomers, elastomeric sheets, plastic sheets, cellophane sheets, nylon sheets, wax sheets, metalized films, and combinations of the foregoing.

50. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet is corrugated.

51. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet is creped.

52. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet includes an imprint.

53. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet includes a score cut.

54. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet includes a score.

55. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet includes a perforation.

56. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the organic binder, inorganic aggregate, and fibrous material are initially dispersed in water to form an aqueous inorganically filled mixture, the inorganically filled matrix formed by removing a substantial portion of the water from the inorganically filled mixture.

57. A sheet as defined in claim 56, wherein the water has a concentration in a range from about 5% to about 50% by volume of the inorganically filled mixture.

58. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the inorganically filled matrix includes finely dispersed air voids.

59. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the fibrous material comprises individual fibers which have a substantially random orientation within the inorganically filled matrix.

60. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the fibrous material comprises individual fibers which have a substantially unidirectional orientation within the inorganically filled matrix.

61. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet may be bent over an angle of up to about 90° without substantial fracture of the inorganically filled matrix.

62. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet may be bent over an angle of up to about 180° without substantial fracture of the inorganically filled matrix.

63. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet will fracture when bent over an angle greater than about 5°.

64. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet will fracture when bent over an angle greater than about 45°.

65. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet has been fashioned into a desired shape of an article of manufacture.

66. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet has been fashioned into a container.

67. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the sheet comprises a continuous sheet that has been rolled onto a spool.

68. A sheet as defined in claim 1, wherein the fibrous material has a concentration in a range from about 5% to about 50% by volume of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

69. A sheet comprising an inorganically filled matrix including a substantially homogeneous mixture of organic binder and inorganic aggregate, and fibers substantially homogeneously dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness in a range from about 0.01 mm to about 1 cm, wherein the organic binder is selected from the group consisting of polysaccharide gums, proteins, cellulose-based materials, non-ionic starches, and mixtures thereof, and wherein the inorganic aggregate has a concentration in a range from about 40% to about 95% by weight of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix.

70. A sheet as defined in claim 69, the inorganically filled matrix having a maximum thickness of about 1 mm.

71. A sheet as defined in claim 69, wherein the organic binder, inorganic aggregate, and fibers are initially dispersed in water to form an aqueous inorganically filled mixture, the inorganically filled matrix being formed by removing a substantial portion of the water from the inorganically filled mixture.

72. A sheet as defined in claim 69, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness of less than about 3 mm.

73. A sheet comprising an inorganically filled matrix including a substantially homogeneous mixture of organic binder and inorganic aggregate, and a fibrous material substantially homogeneously dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness in a range from about 0.01 mm to about 1 cm, degrades after prolonged exposure to water, and is formed by removing a substantial portion of water from an inorganically filled mixture including:

an organic binder being selected from the group consisting of polysaccharides, proteins, and mixtures or derivatives thereof;

an inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 40% to about 95% by weight of total solids in the inorganically filled mixture;

water; and

a fibrous material.

74. A sheet as defined in claim 73, wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness less than about 1 mm.

75. A sheet as defined in claim 73, wherein the sheet is rolled onto a spool.

76. A sheet as defined in claim 73, wherein the inorganically filled matrix is substantially rigid.

77. A sheet comprising an inorganically filled matrix including a substantially homogeneous mixture of organic binder and inorganic aggregate, and organic fibers substantially homogeneously dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix, the organic binder being selected from the group consisting of polysaccharides, proteins, and mixtures or derivatives thereof, wherein the inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 40% to about 95% by weight of total solids in the matrix, and wherein the organic binder and organic fibers have a combined concentration in a range from about 5% to about 60% by weight of total solids in the inorganically filled matrix, and wherein said inorganically filled matrix has a maximum thickness of about 1 cm.

78. A sheet as defined in claim 74, wherein the sheet has a maximum thickness of about 3 mm.

79. A sheet as defined in claim 74, wherein the sheet has a maximum thickness of about 1 mm.

80. A sheet as defined in claim 74, wherein the inorganic aggregate is selected from the group consisting of clay, gypsum, calcium carbonate, mica, silica, alumina, sand, gravel, sandstone, limestone, and mixtures thereof.

81. A sheet as defined in claim 74, wherein the sheet has been fashioned into an article of manufacture.

82. A sheet comprising an inorganically filled matrix including a substantially homogeneous mixture of organic binder and inorganic aggregate, and a fibrous material substantially homogeneously dispersed throughout the inorganically filled matrix, the organic binder being selected from the group consisting of polysaccharides, proteins, and mixtures or derivatives thereof, the inorganic aggregate having a concentration in a range from about 40% to about 95% by weight of total solids in the sheet, wherein said inorganically filled matrix is substantially nonporous, and wherein the inorganically filled matrix has a thickness less than about 1 cm.

83. A sheet as defined in claim 82, said sheet having a maximum thickness of about 3 mm.

84. A sheet as defined in claim 82, said sheet having a maximum thickness of about 1 mm.

85. A sheet as defined in claim 82, wherein the inorganic aggregate is selected from the group consisting of clay, gypsum, calcium carbonate, mica, silica, alumina, sand, gravel, sandstone, limestone, and mixtures or derivatives thereof.

86. A sheet as defined in claim 82, wherein the sheet has been fashioned into an article of manufacture.

87. A sheet as defined in claim 82, wherein the sheet comprises a continuous sheet that has been rolled onto a spool.

* * * * *



US005783266A

United States Patent [19]**Gehrke****Patent Number:** 5,783,266**Date of Patent:** Jul. 21, 1998[54] **EASY-OPEN INDIVIDUAL SEALED SERVING
PACKAGING**[76] Inventor: **Russ Gehrke, 6721 Woodenshoe Rd.,
Neenah, Wis. 54956**[21] Appl. No.: **538,947**[22] Filed: **Oct. 4, 1995**

4,698,246	10/1987	Gibbons et al.	428/34.2
4,767,651	8/1988	Starczewski et al.	428/35.2
4,806,398	2/1989	Martin, Jr.	428/34.2
4,900,594	2/1990	Quick et al.	428/34.2
5,141,795	8/1992	Kai et al.	428/34.3
5,158,499	10/1992	Guckenberger	206/524.2
5,229,180	7/1993	Littmann	428/43
5,312,659	5/1994	Osuka et al.	428/35.2

Related U.S. Application Data

[63] Continuation of Ser. No. 225,281, Mar. 11, 1994, abandoned.

[51] Int. Cl. ⁶ **B65D 33/28; B65D 65/02**[52] U.S. Cl. **428/34.3; 428/53; 428/35.9;
428/43; 428/138; 428/192; 428/458; 428/461;
428/464; 428/475.8; 428/511; 428/516;
428/520; 206/484; 206/524.2; 206/800;
383/207**[58] **Field of Search** **206/800, 524.2,
206/484; 428/34.3, 34.2, 35.3, 35.9, 458,
461, 464, 475.8, 483, 516, 520, 138, 43,
511, 192, 383/207, 209****[56] References Cited****U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

3,201,258	8/1965	Mastella	206/800
4,022,373	5/1977	Kohnlein et al.	426/396
4,687,688	8/1987	Cune et al.	428/516

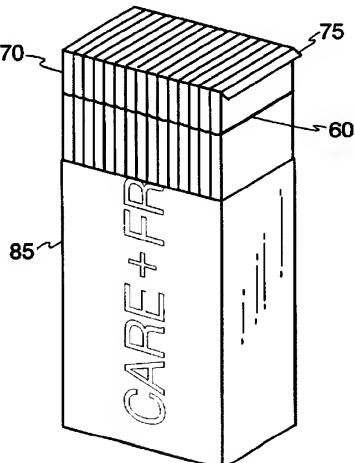
FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0372886 6/1990 European Pat. Off. .

**Primary Examiner—Rena Dye
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—McDermott, Will & Emery****[57] ABSTRACT**

The present invention relates to easy-open hermetically sealed single serving packages. The present invention relates in particular to a multi-layer film that is particularly adapted for use in individually sealed packages where increased storage life of the packaged product is desired. The present invention is also useful in packaging multiple individual servings together in a single overall package, so that when the overall package is opened, the individual servings are protected from oxygen and moisture. More particularly, this invention is concerned with a novel film used for packaging individual sticks of chewing gum so that the freshness of each individual stick of chewing gum or the like is retained for extended periods of time after the overwrap packaging has been opened.

43 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets



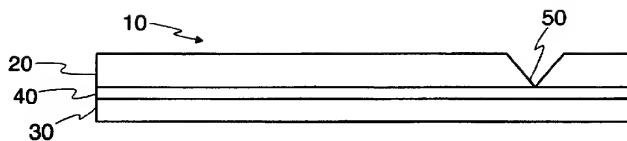


Fig. 1

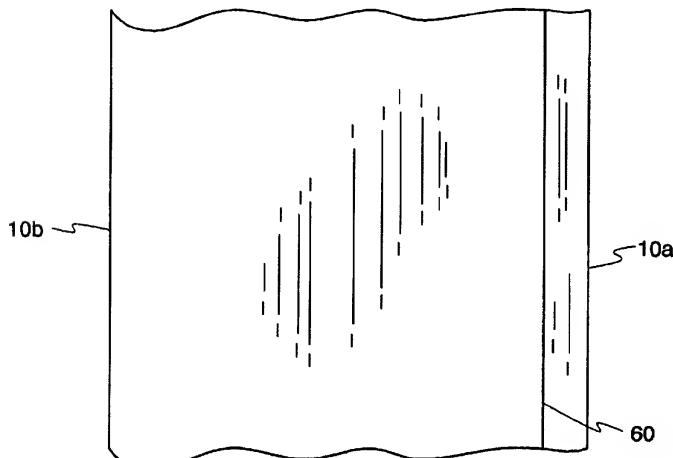


Fig. 2

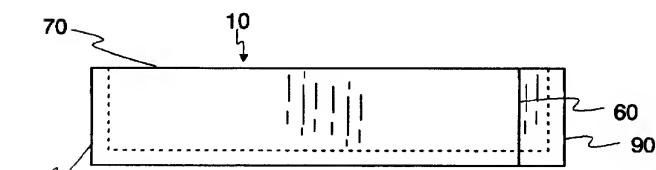


Fig. 4

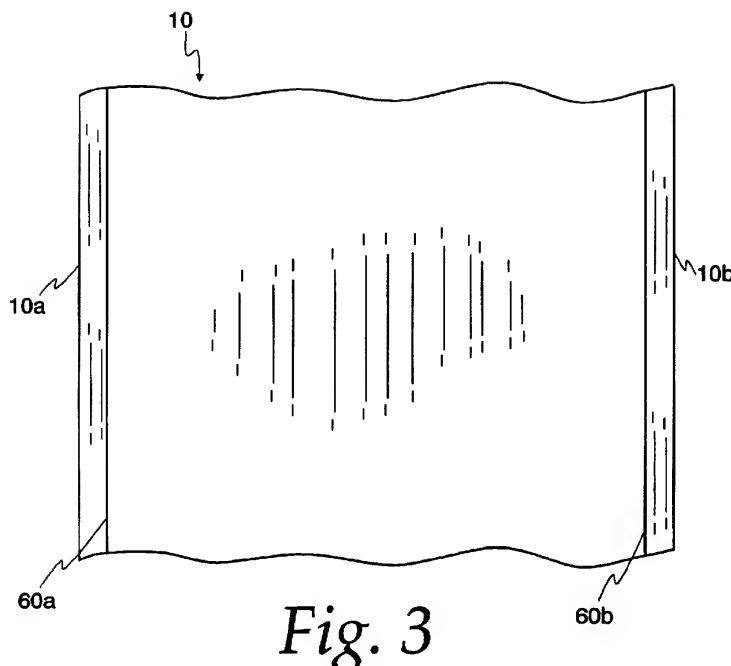


Fig. 3

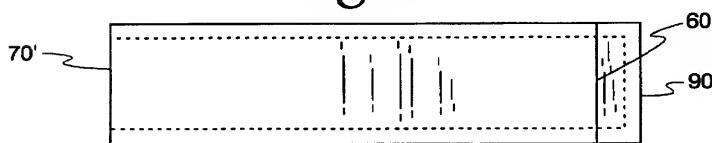


Fig. 5

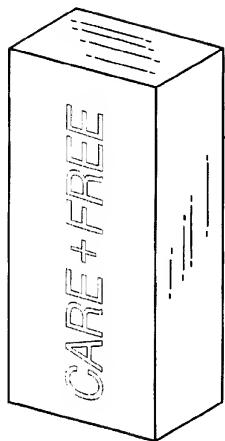


Fig. 6

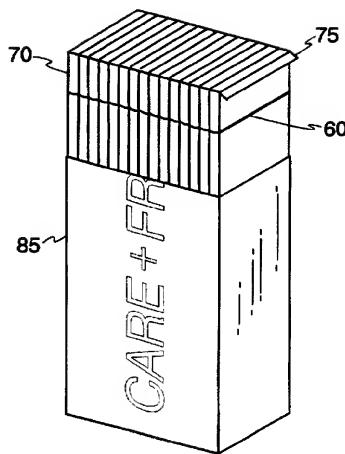


Fig. 7

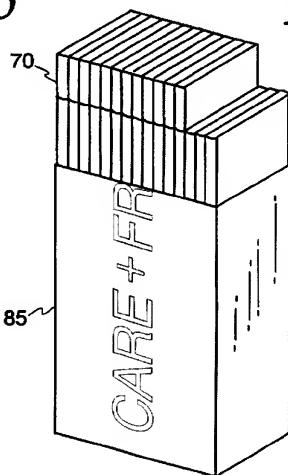


Fig. 8

EASY-OPEN INDIVIDUAL SEALED SERVING PACKAGING

This is a continuation of application Ser. No. 08/225,281 filed Mar. 11, 1994 now abandoned.

The present invention relates to easy-open hermetically sealed single serving packages. The present invention relates in particular to a multi-layer film that is particularly adapted for use in individually sealed packages where increased storage life of the packaged product is desired. The present invention is also useful in packaging multiple individual servings together in a single overall package, so that when the overall package is opened, the individual servings are protected from oxygen and moisture. More particularly, this invention is concerned with a novel film used for packaging individual sticks of chewing gum so that the freshness of each individual stick of chewing gum or the like is retained for extended periods of time after the overwrap packaging has been opened.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

In the past, considerable difficulty has been encountered in providing a satisfactory single serving package that maintains the freshness and storage life of the packaged product while also providing an easy open feature. The present invention is to a novel individually sealed package used for retaining the freshness of the product after the user opens the outer overwrap. In particular, this invention has been adapted to retain the freshness of each individual chewing gum stick or other products that are contained in a multiple item packet.

Chewing gum is merchandised in various forms. One of the most common and popular forms is the "stick" gum. The present invention covers the unique packaging of stick gum and other individually packaged products. Today's sticks of chewing gum are usually "double" packaged by a two-fold process. First, the individual chewing gum stick is wrapped by a folded inner wrap and then an outer sleeve is placed over the inner wrap. In essence, each individual stick of chewing gum contains two wrappers. The inner wrap material widely used for chewing gum is an aluminum foil/wax/paper laminate or paper/wax laminate. As disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,082,594 to Stonehouse, a problem that is encountered with this laminate is that curling may take place due to too little or too much moisture content in the paper layer. This is caused by the ambient moisturizing of the air during the high speed wrapping of the "sticks" of chewing gum. The individually wrapped sticks of chewing gum are then packaged in layers, one above the other, in a packet form and secured by an outer overwrap. This outer overwrap contains a polymeric or metal barrier to moisture and/or oxygen material, which protects the contents of the package from moisture loss and extends the shelf life of the package. Barrier layers have been used in the food packaging industry for the packaging of oxygen sensitive or moisture sensitive products. Products such as chewing gum sticks deteriorate particularly if subject to moisture loss once the outerwrap is opened, as the sticks of gum become stale and dried out. Other products, besides chewing gum sticks, deteriorate not only due to moisture loss, but also due to oxygen exposure once the outerwrap is opened.

One additional problem encountered with today's chewing gum packages is that it is very costly to wrap the chewing gum first with a folded inner wrap, then with an outer sleeve wrap, and package the entire packet of chewing gum sticks in a sealed overwrap. This packaging method

also creates environmental concerns as it increases the amount of wrapper material used and then discarded. The user unwraps the individual sticks of chewing gum from the inner and outer sleeve wraps and disregards the individual wrappers and, after finishing the last stick, disregards the overall wrapping. The present invention permits the reduction of the amount of packaging required to a sealed individual package wrapped with an overall outerwrap as the outer sleeve wrap for each stick may, if desired, be eliminated.

An additional problem encountered by the user is that when the current package of gum sticks is opened, the outer barrier material is removed, exposing the individual gum sticks which are packaged by the folded innerwrap to possible moisture loss. This exposure to oxygen and moisture decreases the freshness of the product, which in turn decreases the storage life of the individual gum sticks. Most jumbo packages of chewing gum contain fifteen or more sticks, hence while the first few sticks are fresh when the pack is opened, the remaining sticks packaged by a folded inner sleeve, become stale and hard due to constant exposure to the atmosphere when left in the user's pockets or out on a table. This problem is particularly noticeable in sugarless gums, and particularly those gums that are stored in a dry atmosphere, i.e. an atmosphere having less than from 50 to 60% relative humidity. In a dry atmosphere with low relative humidity, moisture passes from the gum to the atmosphere thereby causing the gum to lose its freshness. Individual sticks of chewing gum prepared and stored, for extended periods of time, even at room temperature, tend to lose their moisture and elasticity with the result that they become brittle and initially crumble when they are placed in the user's mouth. This known arrangement makes it virtually impossible to offer the prospective user the fresh quality, texture, appearance and feel when an open package of gum is not immediately consumed. Once the outer barrier wrap of the overall package is removed and the remaining sticks are continuously exposed to the atmosphere for long periods of time, the freshness of the gum is diminished.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It has now been surprisingly discovered that superior easy-open hermetically sealed individual packages may be prepared according to the present invention. One of the advantages of the present invention is that an individual hermetically sealed package having good oxygen and moisture barrier properties is provided for individual products that are sold as part of multiple product package. Each individual package is comprised of a multilayer sheet material which provides longer storage life by preventing moisture evacuation from the individually packaged products, i.e. sticks of chewing gum. The present invention provides an inexpensive easy open package for individually wrapping small products like chewing gum. Another advantage of the present invention is that each individually sealed package can if desired have the products' trademark and/or logo printed on the outside which eliminates the need for "double" wrapping the package with a separate printed outer sleeve of paper. The present invention provides a single package which can be provided with a printable outer surface and barrier properties to retain the fresh quality of each individual product. The package of the present invention improves the packaging of similar products known in the prior art, by requiring fewer steps, thereby saving time and production costs. The packaging of the present invention does not require "double" wrapping, i.e. an inner foil/paper wrap and then applying an outer paper sleeve to individual products, such as sticks of chewing gum.

In the present invention, a multilayer film having first and second layers, and preferably a core layer there between, is used to form a package. The package preferably has at least one layer which is relatively impervious to the transmission of oxygen and/or moisture, at least one layer which is sealable preferably by heat, and an easy-open feature formed by scoring or roughening the outer surface. The preferred method of forming the easy open feature is laser scoring.

The present invention comprises an outer layer of either polyester, paper, oriented polypropylene or other suitable material that can be scored. The outer layer of the laminate is preferably polyethylene terephthalate (PET). The inner layer of the multilayer sheet material, i.e. the layer in contact with the product, is preferably a sealable layer comprised of a polyolefin selected from a group consisting of copolymers of ethylene such as ethylene methacrylate (EMA), low density polyethylene (LDPE), ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA), blends of linear low density polyethylene (LLDPE) and EVA, blends of LDPE and LLDPE, and an ionomer such as that sold commercially under the trademark "Surlyn". The blends in the inner layer may be from 25% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 75% linear low density polyethylene. Alternatively, the inner layer may be comprised of a blend of 25% to less than 100% of EVA and greater than 0% up to 75% linear low density polyethylene. The core layer of the multilayer film is a barrier layer. The barrier can be either a metal foil, a thin layer of metal formed by vapor deposition, a vinylidene chloride copolymer, MXD6, a xylene group-containing polyamide resin known as nylon MXD6, (available from Toyobo or Mitsubishi Gas Chemicals Company,) nylon or ethylene vinyl alcohol (EVOH). The preferred barrier material is a metal layer formed by vapor deposition which is an inexpensive means for providing an oxygen and moisture barrier in a multi-layer laminate. Individually wrapping each product or stick of gum in this multi-layer laminate eliminates the need of having an oxygen and moisture barrier overwrap. It is significantly less costly to wrap the individual products in this laminate than it is to use a foil layer in the outer wrapper of a jumbo chewing gum package.

In summary, it is an object of the present invention to improve the packaging of individual gum sticks or the like so that they do not absorb significant quantities of moisture from the atmosphere or lose significant quantities of moisture to the atmosphere. This extends the storage life of the product after the user opens the package of chewing gum.

It is a further object of the present invention to decrease the amount of time and packaging used to wrap individual chewing gum sticks and to reduce packaging costs by providing a single sealed primary package for each stick of chewing gum.

It is still another object of the present invention to provide the user with an easy-open feature by laser scoring the multilayer sheet material used to form the package for individually wrapping the chewing gum stick or the like.

The invention, accordingly, comprises an article possessing the construction, combination of elements, and arrangements of parts which are exemplified in the following detailed disclosure. For a fuller understanding of the nature and objects of the invention, reference should be made to the following description taken in connection with the accompanying drawings.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a sectional view of the multilayer sheet material of the present invention.

FIG. 2 is a top view of the sheet material with a single laser scored line on one side.

FIG. 3 is a top view of the sheet material with two laser score lines one on each side.

FIG. 4 is a top view of the sheet material formed into a sealed package showing a vertical C-fold with a single score line.

FIG. 5 is a top view of the sheet material formed into a sealed package showing a vertical C-fold with a double score line.

FIG. 6 is a side view of an fifteen stick chewing gum package.

FIG. 7 is a side view of an opened fifteen stick package of chewing gum depicting the laser score line on the outer surface of the sealed inner package.

FIG. 8 is a side view of an open fifteen stick package with three chewing gum sticks removed.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

The multilayer sheet material structure (10) used to fabricate the packages of the present invention is shown in FIG. 1. The multilayer sheet material is comprised of an outer layer (20), an inner layer (30), and a core layer (40). The outer layer of the sheet material (10) is comprised of a suitable polymeric material preferably one that has a certain stiffness, such as a polyester, an oriented polypropylene or paper. The core layer is a barrier layer comprised of materials suitable for preventing the transmission of oxygen and/or moisture. The sheet material of the present invention is scored or roughened preferably with a laser which cuts through the outer surface but not the core layer to provide an easy open feature. When a metal foil or a layer of metal formed by vapor deposition is used in the barrier layer, the laser reflects off the core layer (40) providing for a clean cut (50) of the appropriate depth. Although only three layers are depicted in FIG. 1, additional layers may be included, i.e., an adhesive or tie layer, or a primer layer. Additional layers may also include a layer to provide a suitable printing surface and one or more layers on the printed layer to protect the print.

The inner layer (30) of the sheet material (10) contacts the product contained in the package and also serves as the seal layer. The layer is preferably comprised of polyethylene, or copolymers of ethylene, for example, low density polyethylene (LDPE), blends of linear low density polyethylene (LLDPE) and LDPE, ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA), blends of LLDPE and EVA, and ionomers such as that sold commercially under the trademark "Surlyn". The inner or sealable layer is selected preferably because it forms a good heat seal. The heat seal allows the product, i.e. a chewing gum stick, to retain its freshness during the shelf life and after the product's outer package has been opened by the user.

The outer layer (20) of the sheet material structure (10) of the present invention may be comprised of a polyester, oriented polypropylene, paper or other material which may be readily scored or roughened by mechanical means or by a laser. The outer layer (20) is preferably comprised of a polyester such as polyethylene terephthalate (PET). The outer layer (20) material may also be suitable for coating with a thin layer of metal by means of vapor deposition.

In another embodiment, a core layer (40) comprised of a barrier material is between the outer and inner layers (20, 30). The core layer (40) is an oxygen and/or moisture barrier comprised of a metal foil such as aluminum foil, polyvinylidene chloride copolymer (PVDC) or ethylene vinyl alcohol (EVOH). The polyvinylidene chloride copolymer

may be a copolymer with vinyl chloride or an alkyl acrylate such as methyl acrylate. The preferred barrier material (40) is comprised of a thin layer of metal formed by vapor deposition, on the inner surface of the outer layer.

There are numerous embodiments of the present invention comprising different combinations of the various materials for each of the multiple film or sheet material layers. A preferred embodiment of the present invention is a sheet material comprised of an outer layer of polyethylene terephthalate (PET), oriented polypropylene nylon or paper, an inner layer of low density polyethylene, wherein a thin layer of metal is formed by vapor deposition on the surface of the outer layer that contacts the inner layer of LDPE. When the outer layer of the film is laser scored, the laser cuts through the PET. When it reaches the metal surface formed by vapor deposition, the laser reflects off the metal to provide a good clean cut for easy opening of the package by the user. Another embodiment of the present invention is a multi-layer laminate comprised of an outer layer of oriented polypropylene (OPP), an inner heat sealant layer of ethylene vinyl acetate (EVA), and a core of a metal. In this embodiment, the laser cuts through the oriented polypropylene layer to the core of metal.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a package having a multilayer laminate comprising only two layers: an outer layer of polyester, oriented polypropylene, nylon or paper, and an inner layer of a polyethylene or polyethylene copolymer. The outer layer maybe metallized if desired. If metallized it is often desirable to coat the metallized surface with a primer of urethane or an imine such as polyethylene imine. The outer layer of paper is suitable for laser scoring and the paper also exhibits excellent deadfold properties, while the inner layer of polyethylene remains relatively unaffected by the laser and facilitates the formation of the package.

In addition to the three layer structures detailed above, the multilayer laminate used in the package of the present invention may have additional layers. In some embodiments, a tie or an adhesive layer may be disposed on either side of the core layer. Suitable materials for such layers are known to the ordinary skilled artisan and may include, by way of example, anhydride modified polyolefins (e.g., graft copolymer of maleic anhydride and propylene wherein maleic anhydride moieties are grafted onto polypropylene chains), ethylene acrylic acid copolymers, ethylene methyl acrylate copolymers, blends or copolymers of polypropylene and EVA, or other synthetic resinous materials. The selected adhesive should be stable for the conditions under which the packages of the invention are fabricated and used. For additional information on adhesives, reference is made to U.S. patent application Ser. No. 07/458,489, filed Dec. 28, 1989 incorporated herein by reference.

The hermetically sealed package of the present invention is formed by fabricating a multiple layer film or sheet material as disclosed above, scoring the outer layer of the film or sheet material, (preferably with a laser) equidistant from and along two opposing edges. C-folding the film or sheet material so that the fold is parallel to the laser scored lines and heat sealing the three open sides after inserting the product so that the laser scored lines are between the seal and the product. The sheet material of the present invention can also be formed into a hermetically sealed package by forming two films or sheets of material of the same size, laser scoring the surface of the outer layer of one or both of the sheets, positioning the two films or sheet materials so that the inner surfaces are in face to face contact, the perimeters are aligned and the product is disposed between

them, and heat sealing the perimeter of the two films or sheet material so that the laser score lines are between the seal and the product. The laser scoring can be a single line or more preferably, it can be a double scored line wherein two parallel laser scored lines in close proximity are used. The advantage of a double score line on the package is that when folding the single sheet or aligning the two sheets of material the score lines are less likely to be misaligned. In addition, the double score line makes it easier for the user to open the package with the easy open tear feature. When a single film or sheet material is used to make the package, a single laser score line can be used along the axis of the fold to facilitate making the C-fold. Additionally, other easy-open features known in the art, such as a tear strip or tab features can also be used.

FIG. 2 shows a top view of the sheet material (10) of FIG. 1 which has a continuous laser score line (60) along the entire length of one edge (10a) of the sheet material, preferably disposed adjacent to the seal area between the seal and the contents of the package. The laser scores the outer layer (20) of the film or sheet material as shown in FIG. 1. The laser scores the outer layer from the surface to the barrier, but does not cut through the barrier. In a preferred embodiment, the barrier is comprised of metal, and the metal reflects the laser to provide a clean cut in the outer layer without affecting other layers of the structure. The laser scoring is performed preferably prior to folding the film structure.

FIG. 3 shows a top view of the sheet material (10) with two parallel laser scored lines (60a, 60b) in the outer layer along opposing edges (10a, 10b) of the sheet material (10). When the sheet is folded along a central axis parallel to the laser scored lines (60a, 60b) so that the inner layer contacts itself, the laser scored lines should be substantially aligned. The depth of the laser scoring will vary according to the sheet material structure, including the materials used and the thickness of each layer. In all of the embodiments of the present invention, the laser scoring should not score the barrier layer.

FIG. 4 shows a top view of the sheet material as shown in FIG. 2 that has been hermetically sealed along three edges to form a package (80). The package (80) has a single score line (60) in the outer layer of one of the package walls, which is preferably adjacent to the seal (90) and between the seal and the product. The package (80) has two opposing walls formed by folding the sheet material (10) along a fold line (70) that is perpendicular to the laser score line (60). The fold line (70) is known as a C-fold and it forms one edge of the package after the product is inserted and the three remaining edges are sealed. The package hermetically seals the product within and maintains the freshness of the stick of chewing gum. The laser score line (60) is located between the seal (90) and the contents of the package to provide easy opening thereof.

FIG. 5 shows a top view of another embodiment of the package made from the sheet material in either FIGS. 2 or 3. The outer layer of sheet material (10) in FIG. 2 has a laser scored along one edge (10a) and the outer layer of the sheet material (10) in FIG. 3 is scored along two opposing edges (10a, 10b). The package in FIG. 5 is formed by folding the sheet material (10) along a central axis parallel to the laser score line(s) so that the inner layer contacts itself and the opposing edges (70', 90') are aligned. When the sheet material (10) of FIG. 3 is used, the laser score lines (60a, 60b) are substantially aligned. After a product is disposed between the two package walls formed by folding the sheet material (10), the three open edges are heat sealed to form

a hermetically sealed package with the laser score line(s) (60) between the heat seal and the product. The score line (60) can be a single laser score line or a double laser score (60) line and it provides an easy open tear strip.

Although FIGS. 4 and 5 disclose a package formed by folding a single film or sheet material, another embodiment has two sheets of films or material with one or two score lines positioned with the inner layers face-to-face. After a product is disposed between the two sheets, the four open edges are hermetically heat sealed to form the package.

FIGS. 6, 7 and 8 show the package of the present invention with an overwrap that forms a 15-piece chewing gum package. FIG. 6 shows an unopened fifteen stick chewing gum pack with a known outer foil wrapper (85). This wrapper may now be comprised of a less expensive material even without a barrier because the present invention provides a barrier for each individually sealed stick of chewing gum (70). FIG. 7 shows that after the outer wrapper (85) is opened, the individual sticks of chewing gum are exposed to oxygen and moisture in the atmosphere. As shown in FIG. 7, the laser score lines (60) are at the open end of the outer package (70) and the end seal (75) is folded. The upper portion of the outer wrapper (85) in FIG. 7 is removed by a known tear strip. By applying a slight pressure the user can break the seal on an individual package at or about the score line to open the individual chewing gum package and remove the stick of gum. The score line (60) provides the easy open feature of the present invention. FIG. 8 shows three of the individual sticks of chewing gum removed with the remaining twelve sticks protected from moisture loss by the individual packages. This allows unused sticks of gum to remain fresh after the package has been opened for a long period of time.

As discussed above, a preferred embodiment of the present invention uses a three layer sheet material with an outer protective layer and an inner heat sealant layer and a barrier core layer. However, the sheet material may have additional layers such as a tie layer or an adhesion layer.

The oriented polypropylene used in this invention, may be oriented, by conventional processes, such as blown tubular orientation, stretch orientation, or molecular orientation.

In addition to using ink or an ink layer for printing on the individual chewing gum wrappers of this invention, other appropriate printing processes can be used, e.g., a rewinder which imprints appropriate characters into the film comprising polymeric and/or thermoplastic material. The packages of this invention can be heat or adhesive sealed to provide a hermetic seal. It has been found that laser scoring the entire width of the package material, including across the area that is sealed, does not weaken or reduce the air-tightness of the package.

Throughout this specification, reference is made to multilayer structures, inner wrappers, film structures and sheet materials. These structures are the same thickness as conventional structures used for similar packaging applications. Typical thicknesses of films and film structures can range from about 0.25 mils to 2.0 mils, preferably about 0.75 to about 1.5 mils. Films thinner than about 0.25 mils may not have the strength necessary to perform the required function.

As to extrusion or coextrusion methods and apparatus for making multiple layer sheet materials, reference is made to commonly owned U.S. patent application Ser. Nos. 07/458,486, 07/458,487, and 7/458,488, all filed on Dec. 28, 1989, and each incorporated herein by reference. For further background on films and apparatus for producing them, reference is made to U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,477,099, 4,755,402,

3,558,330, 4,714,638, 4,842,791, 4,379,117, and 4,804,510 each of which is incorporated herein by reference. For background on barrier compositions and articles made therefrom reference is made to U.S. Pat. No. 5,281,360 which is incorporated herein by reference.

As to easy-open packages and closure, reference is made to commonly owned U.S. patent application Ser. Nos. 07/534,200 filed on Jun. 6, 1990, 07/771,643 filed on Oct. 4, 1991, and 07/838,244 filed on Feb. 12, 1992 and each incorporated herein by reference.

With respect to means for opening packages, or to laser scoring, or to sheet material structures, reference is made to the following:

U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,313,642, 3,404,988, 3,608,815, 3,626,143, 3,693,785, 3,790,744, 3,909,582, 3,925,591, 3,986,640, 4,172,915, 4,217,327, 4,236,652, 4,356,375, 4,407,873, 4,543,279, 4,549,063, 4,557,377, 4,571,340, 4,656,094, 4,698,246, 4,762,514, 4,765,999, 4,778,058, 4,784,885, 4,785,937, 4,788,105, 4,808,421, 4,834,245, 4,880,701, 4,894,115, 4,934,245; and Japanese Utility Model Publications Nos. 54-22484 and 51-48775. Reference is also made to U.S. Pat. No. 4,681,781, German Patent Document 2803074, UL 973,109 and EPA 0357841.

Bowen, U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,909,502 and 3,709,444 Fry, U.S. Pat. No. 3,626,143, Ang, U.S. Pat. No. 4,549,063, Josephy, U.S. Pat. No. 4,356,375 and Yoshida, U.S. Pat. No. 4,762,514 all relate to laser scoring and each of these U.S. Patents is hereby incorporated herein by reference.

Bowen, U.S. Pat. No. 3,790,744 relates to forming one line of weakness in at least one but not all layers of a multilayer structure by preferentially vaporizing with a beam of radiant energy a line in at least one layer which is not the most proximate layer in relation to the source of radiant energy. Bowen, U.S. Pat. No. 3,909,582, deals with forming a line of weakness defining a tear path in a multilayer sheet material by scoring with a beam of radian energy the most proximate layer in relation to the source of radiant energy.

Fry, U.S. Pat. No. 3,626,143, similarly relates to focusing a single beam of laser light upon a thermoplastic substrate so as to form a single score.

The score line may be either a single line or a pair of parallel lines as disclosed in commonly owned U.S. application Ser. Nos. 07/720,121 filed on Jul. 1, 1991 and 08/048,754 filed on Apr. 16, 1992, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference. The score line may extend across the entire surface of the packages including the area of the end seals.

Where the score is caused by a laser it is important not to score too deeply in order to prevent premature rupturing of the package. In multi-layer sheet materials, the laser score extends through the first layer and into the second layer for a two layered film.

As stated above there can be a plurality of score lines to render the package more easily opened. The score lines can be approximately $\frac{1}{16}$ ", $\frac{1}{8}$ " or $\frac{1}{4}$ " apart and naturally, the distance may be varied to suit the sheet material and the purposes of the individual package. The scores are preferably continuous but need not be. For example, the scores can be two cuts or a series of cuts.

Having thus described in detail preferred embodiments of the present invention, it is to be understood that the invention

tion defined by the appended claims is not to be limited by particular details set forth in the above description as many apparent variations thereof are possible without departing from the spirit or scope of the present invention.

I claim:

1. A packaging system adapted for packaging a product comprising a first packaging substrate said first packaging substrate being adapted when sealed to form an air tight package and a second separate packaging substrate completely enclosed within said first packaging substrate, wherein said first and second packaging substrates are not fixedly joined together and wherein said second packaging substrate forms a separate individually sealed package within said first packaging substrate, said second packaging substrate in contact with the product to be packaged comprising a sheet having a first layer, a second layer, and a barrier layer disposed between said first layer and said second layer, said second layer material selected from the group consisting essentially of polyester, oriented polypropylene, nylon and paper and said first layer of a polyolefin selected from the group consisting essentially of ethylene methacrylate, ethylene vinyl acetate, blends of low density polyethylene and linear low density polyethylene and blends of ethylene vinyl acetate and linear low density polyethylene, and ionomers; and a barrier layer disposed between said outer layer and said inner layer; and said sheet of said second packaging substrate having an easy-open feature and said sheet of said second packaging substrate having a thickness from about 0.25 mils to 2.0 mils.

2. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the barrier layer is a metal.

3. A packaging system according to claim 2 wherein the barrier layer is a metal formed by vapor deposition.

4. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the easy-open feature comprises at least one score line on the second layer.

5. A packaging system according to claim 4 wherein the score line is formed by a laser.

6. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the polyester is polyethylene terephthalate.

7. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the first packaging substrate has a tear strip to provide easy-opening of the first packaging substrate.

8. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 30% linear low density polyethylene.

9. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 50% linear low density polyethylene.

10. Packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 25% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 75% linear low density polyethylene.

11. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% up to 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 30% linear low density polyethylene.

12. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% up to 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 50% linear low density polyethylene.

13. A packaging system according to claim 1 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 25% up to 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 75% linear low density polyethylene.

14. A film according to claim 1 wherein said second or sealable layer comprises low density polyethylene.

15. A packaging system adapted for packaging a product comprising a first packaging substrate said first packaging

substrate being adapted when sealed to form an air tight package and a second separate packaging substrate completely enclosed within said first packaging substrate, wherein said first and second packaging substrates are not fixedly joined together and wherein said second packaging substrate forms a separate individually sealed package within said first packaging substrate, said second packaging substrate in contact with the product to be packaged comprising a sheet having an outer layer of a material selected from the group consisting essentially of polyester, oriented polypropylene, nylon; an inner layer of a polyolefin selected from the group consisting essentially of ethylene methacrylate, blends of low density polyethylene and linear low density polyethylene and blends of ethylene vinyl acetate and linear low density polyethylene, and ionomers; and a barrier layer disposed between said outer layer and said inner layer; and said sheet of said second packaging substrate having an easy-open feature and said sheet of said second packaging substrate having a thickness from about 0.25 mils to 2.0 mils.

16. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the barrier layer is a metal.

17. A packaging system according to claim 16 wherein the barrier layer is a metal formed by vapor deposition.

18. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the easy-open feature comprises at least one score line on the second layer.

19. A packaging system according to claim 18 wherein the score line is formed by a laser.

20. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the polyester is polyethylene terephthalate.

21. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the first packaging substrate has a tear strip to provide easy-opening of the first packaging substrate.

22. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 30% of linear low density polyethylene.

23. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 50% of linear low density polyethylene.

24. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend of from 25% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 75% of linear low density polyethylene.

25. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% to less than 100% of ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 30% of linear low density polyethylene.

26. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% to less than 100% of ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 50% linear low density polyethylene.

27. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 25% to less than 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 75% linear low density polyethylene.

28. A packaging system according to claim 15 wherein the first packaging substrate contains a barrier.

29. A packaging system according to claim 28 wherein the barrier is a metal between the outer layer and the inner layer of the second substrate.

30. A multiple product packaging unit comprising a first packaging substrate and a second packaging substrate, said first packaging substrate forming an outer wrapping around said second packaging substrate and said first

packaging substrate having a tear strip to provide easy-opening of said first packaging substrate.

said second packaging substrate comprising individually sealed packages, wherein each individually sealed package comprises an outer layer of a material selected from the group consisting of polyesters, oriented polypropylene, nylon and paper; a sealable layer selected from the group consisting of ethylene methacrylate, ethylene vinyl acetate, blends of low density polyethylene and linear low density polyethylene and blends of ethylene vinyl acetate and linear low density polyethylene, and ionomers; and a barrier layer disposed between said outer layer and said sealable layer; and wherein each of said individually sealed packages has an easy-open feature.

31. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the barrier layer is comprised of metal.

32. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 31 wherein the barrier layer is comprised of metal formed by vapor deposition.

33. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the easy-open feature of each of said individually sealed packages comprises a score line in said outer layer.

34. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 33 wherein the score line has been formed by a laser.

35. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the polyester is polyethylene terephthalate.

36. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% to less

than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 30% linear low density polyethylene.

37. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 36 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 50% linear low density polyethylene.

38. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 25% to less than 100% of low density polyethylene and greater than 0% up to 75% linear low density polyethylene.

39. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 70% to less than 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 30% linear low density polyethylene.

40. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 50% to less than 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 50% linear low density polyethylene.

41. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer is a blend from 25% to less than 100% ethylene vinyl acetate and up to 75% linear low density polyethylene.

42. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the second packaging substrate has a thickness from about 0.25 mils to 2.0 mils.

43. A multiple product packaging unit according to claim 30 wherein the sealable layer comprises low density polyethylene.

* * * * *



Standard Test Method for Unrestrained Linear Thermal Shrinkage of Plastic Film and Sheeting¹

This standard is issued under the fixed designation D 2732; the number immediately following the designation indicates the year of original adoption or, in the case of revision, the year of last revision. A number in parentheses indicates the year of last reapproval. A superscript epsilon (ε) indicates an editorial change since the last revision or reapproval.

1. Scope

1.1 This test method covers determination of the degree of unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage at given specimen temperatures of plastic film and sheeting of 0.76 mm (0.030 in.) thickness or less. This test method does not cover shrinkage from loss of solvent in some materials.

1.2 *This standard does not purport to address all of the safety concerns, if any, associated with its use. It is the responsibility of the user of this standard to establish appropriate safety and health practices and determine the applicability of regulatory limitations prior to use.*

Note 1—This document is similar in concept to ISO/DIS 11501, but it is unknown at this time whether both methods give comparable results.

2. Referenced Documents

2.1 ASTM Standards:

- D 618 Practice for Conditioning Plastics for Testing²
- D 1204 Test Method for Linear Dimensional Changes of Nonrigid Thermoplastic Sheeting or Film at Elevated Temperature²
- D 1898 Practice for Sampling of Plastics²
- E 1 Specification for ASTM Thermometers³

3. Terminology

3.1 Definitions:

3.1.1 *unrestrained linear thermal shrinkage (free shrink or shrinkage)*—the irreversible and rapid reduction in linear dimension in a specified direction occurring in film subjected to elevated temperatures under conditions where no or negligible restraint to inhibit shrinkage is present. It is normally expressed as a percentage of the original dimension.

¹ This test method is under the jurisdiction of ASTM Committee D-20 on Plastics and is the direct responsibility of Subcommittee D20.19 on Films and Sheeting.

Current edition approved Sept. 10, 1996. Published February 1997. Originally published as D 2732 - 68 T. Last previous edition D 2732 - 83 (1989)⁴.

This revision has incorporated an ISO equivalency statement, a revised precision and bias statement, keywords, and some of the note material has been included in the text.

² Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol 08.01.

³ Annual Book of ASTM Standards, Vol 14.03.

4. Significance and Use

4.1 As a result of the manufacturing process, internal stresses may be locked into the film which can be released by heating. The temperature at which shrinkage will occur is related to the processing techniques employed to manufacture the film and may also be related to a phase transition in the base resin. The magnitude of the shrinkage will vary with the temperature of the film.

4.2 Shrinkage of a particular material produced by a particular process may be characterized by this test method by making measurements at several temperatures through the shrinkage range of the material.

4.3 Following a characterization in a particular case, it is usually sufficient thereafter to measure shrinkage at only one selected temperature for purposes of process or quality control, or both.

5. Apparatus

5.1 *Constant-Temperature Liquid Bath*, capable of controlling accurately to $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$.

5.1.1 The liquid for the bath should not plasticize or react with the specimens. Poly(ethylene glycol), glycerin, and water have been found to have wide applicability.

5.2 *Thermometer*—ASTM Thermometer 1 C conforming to the requirements as prescribed in Specification E 1.

5.3 *Square Metal Stamp*, 100 by 100 mm, with engraved arrow indicating machine direction of film and stamp pad and ink. (The ink should not be soluble in the bath liquid.)

Note 2—A metal die or template (100 by 100 mm) can be used instead of the square metal stamp.

5.4 *Free Shrink Holder*—A holder designed for test of a single specimen, such as that shown in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2. Alternatively, a holder such as that shown in Fig. 3 may be used to immerse several specimens at a time. However, checks must be made to assure that contact among the specimens does not result in errors.

5.5 *Ruler*, graduated in millimetres.

NOTE
1. (A) C
(B) F
(C) V

2. Two

6. Te

6.1

sampl

6.2

tempe

6.3

Practi

7. Ce

7.1

2°C (

than .

Practi

In ca

(± 1 h

7.2

withini

lize.

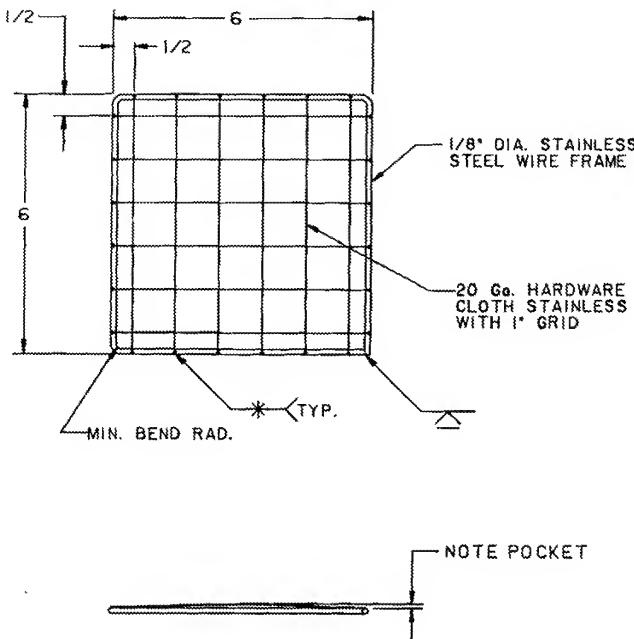


FIG. 1 Construction of Top and Bottom Grid Retainers of Specimen Holder

6. Test Specimen

6.1 The test specimen shall consist of 100 by 100-mm samples.

6.2 A minimum of two specimens is necessary for each test temperature.

6.3 The material shall be sampled in accordance with Practice D 1898.

2. Conditioning

7.1 *Conditioning*—Condition the test specimens at $23 \pm 2^\circ\text{C}$ ($73.4 \pm 3.6^\circ\text{F}$) and $50 \pm 5\%$ relative humidity for not less than 40 h prior to test in accordance with Procedure A of Practice D 618, for those tests where conditioning is required. In cases of disagreement, the tolerances shall be $\pm 1^\circ\text{C}$ ($\pm 1.8^\circ\text{F}$) and $\pm 2\%$ relative humidity.

7.2 *Test Conditions*—Set the liquid bath temperature to within $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ of the desired temperature and allow to stabilize.

8. Procedure

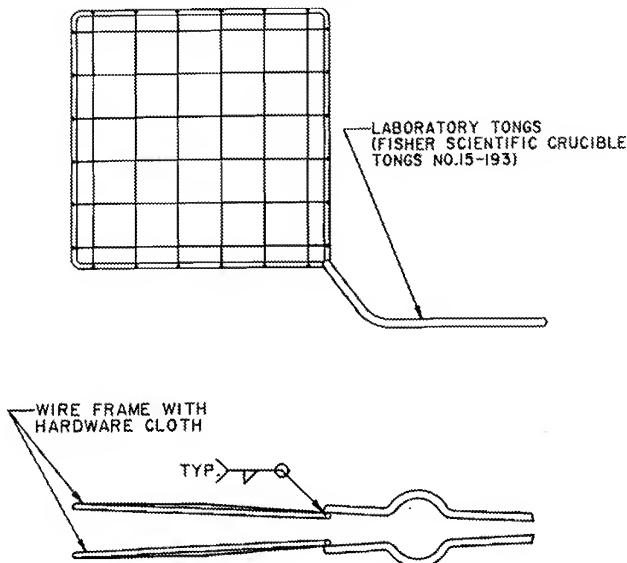
8.1 Stamp and cut out the stamped section of film. A small border of film may be left around the stamped area.

8.1.1 As an alternative method, the specimens may be cut with a die or with the aid of a template. An edge of the die may be notched to designate film direction.

8.2 Place the specimen in a free shrink holder such that it is free from contact with the edges of the holder. The holder should restrain the specimen from floating in the bath medium while allowing free circulation of the bath medium around the specimen. Multiple specimens can be tested but care should be exercised to prevent restraint between the specimens.

8.3 Observe and record the temperature of the bath before immersion of each specimen.

8.4 Immerse the specimen in the bath for 10 s or a time determined to be sufficient for the material to come to thermal equilibrium and undergo maximum shrinkage. Do not hold the



Note 1—Weld one wire frame to the inside of both arms of the tongs as shown.
 FIG. 2 Assembly of Specimen Holder



FIG. 3 Trough and Wire Basket

specimen over the bath prior to immersion, as it may result in premature shrinkage or annealing, which may introduce an error.

Note 3—Immersion for 10 s has been determined to be generally adequate for most thermoplastics of up to 0.05 mm (0.002 in.) thickness;

however, for new or thicker materials, a different time of immersion may be required to ensure maximum shrinkage at the temperature of interest.

8.5 Remove the specimen from the bath and quickly immerse in a liquid medium at room temperature preferably miscible with the bath medium.

8.6 After 5 s remove the specimen from the cooling medium and measure and record the linear dimensions of the specimen both the machine (longitudinal) and transverse directions.

Note 4—Caution: Avoid stretching the specimen.

9. Calculation

9.1 Determine the percent free shrinkage for each direction as follows:

$$\text{Unrestrained linear shrinkage, \%} = [(L_0 - L_f)/L_0] \times 100 \quad (1)$$

where:

L_0 = initial length of side(100 mm), and

L_f = length of side after shrinking.

Note 5—If the material elongates, a negative number will result.

Note 6—Since the original dimension is exactly 100 mm, the shrinkage may be read directly from the rule by placing the 100-mm mark on one end of the line and reading millimetres opposite the other end of the line as the percent shrinkage.

9.2 Sample Calculations:

$$\text{Initial length, } L_0 = 100 \text{ mm} \quad (2)$$

$$\text{Length after shrinkage, } L_f = 75 \text{ mm} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{Unrestrained linear shrinkage, \%} = [(100 - 75)/100] \times 100 = 25 \quad (4)$$

10. Report

10.1 The report shall include the following:

10.1.1 Average percent linear free shrinkage in both directions, machine (longitudinal) and transverse,

10.1.2 Bath temperature,

10.1.3 Complete sample identification, and

10.1.4 Number of specimens tested.

11. Precision and Bias

11.1 *Precision*—Round-robin tests between five locations have shown good agreement by this procedure with reproducibility as shown in Fig. 4 and Fig. 5; however, the round-robin data is unavailable to calculate the parameters for a formal precision and bias statement.

11.2 *Bias*—There are no recognized standards by which to estimate the bias of this test method.

12. Keywords

12.1 free shrink; plastics; sheeting; unrestrained linear shrinkage

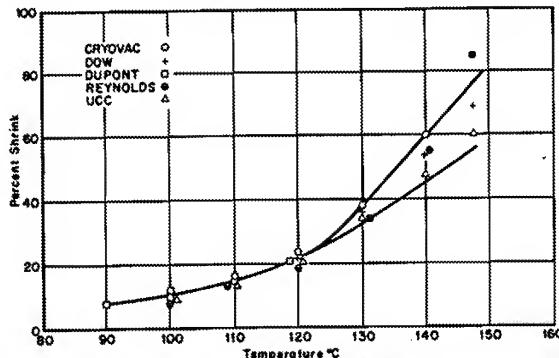


FIG. 4 Round-Robin Data for Machine-Direction Shrinkage of Biaxially-Oriented Polyethylene Sheeting

D 2732

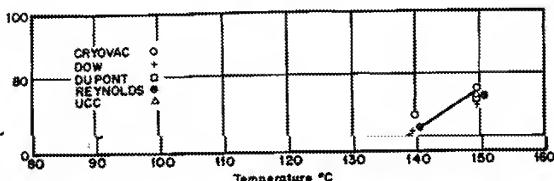


FIG. 5 Round Robin Data for Transverse-Direction Shrinkage of Blaxially-Oriented Polysulfone Sheeting

ASTM International takes no position respecting the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any item mentioned in this standard. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, are entirely their own responsibility.

This standard is subject to revision at any time by the responsible technical committee and must be reviewed every five years and if not revised, either reapproved or withdrawn. Your comments are invited either to revision of this standard or for additional standards and should be addressed to ASTM International Headquarters. Your comments will receive careful consideration at a meeting of the responsible technical committee, which you may attend. If you feel that your comments have not received a fair hearing you should make your views known to the ASTM Committee on Standards, at the address shown below.

This standard is copyrighted by ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2955, United States. Individual reprints (single or multiple copies) of this standard may be obtained by contacting ASTM at the above address or at 610-832-9555 (phone), 610-832-9555 (fax), or service@astm.org (e-mail); or through the ASTM website (www.astm.org).



known into th
compo
reinfor
include
reinfor
consist
weight.
materia
as whe

None
1.2
standar
1.3
safety
respons
priate
bility o

2. Ref
2.1
D 61
D 79
tive
D 15
Gr
D 25
Re

¹ These
Plastics a
Thermos
Cure
Approved

² Ann.

³ Ann.

Copyright